

Thank you very much for choosing this vehicle.

In order to correctly operate and maintain your vehicle, please take the time to read this manual carefully.

After reading, please leave the manual in the vehicle for future reference. Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the same time of resale, as the new owner will also need to read the information in it.

All the information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing.

Remember that authorized service centre knows your vehicle best and has factory-trained technicians and OEM parts to guarantee your safety. Do not use non-OEM parts or accessories to modify your vehicle. Modifying will affect the functionality, safety and durability of your vehicle.

According to the specification of equipment and features of your vehicle, some descriptions and illustrations may differ from that on your vehicle.

Any data, descriptions and illustrations provided in this manual cannot be used as the basis for any insurance claim.

We reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications at any time without notice.

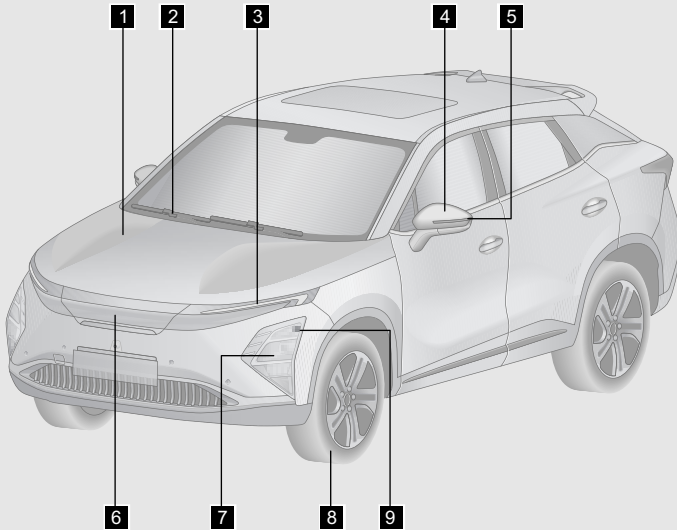
All rights reserved. This document should not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission.

Happy driving!

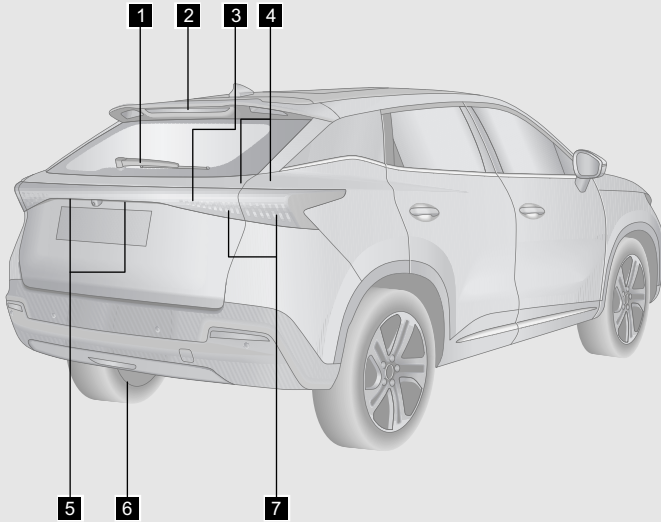
Version No: T19CEVOM24EN01

Issued June 2024

# Pictorial Index

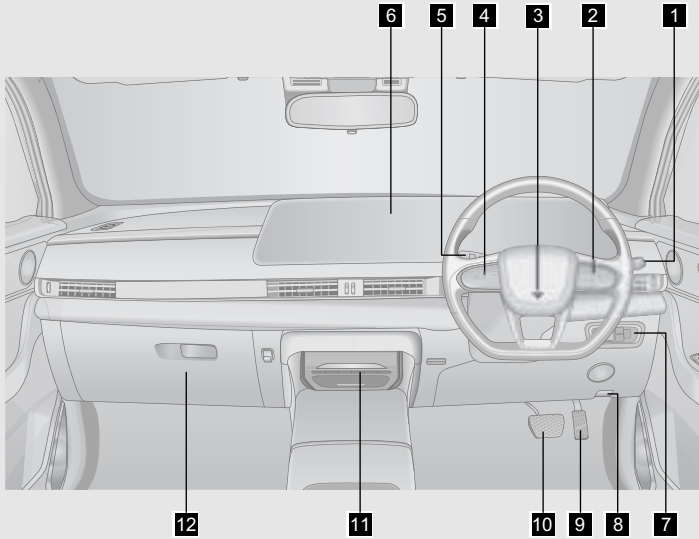


|          |  |       |
|----------|--|-------|
| <b>1</b> | Front Compartment Cover .....                        | P.129 |
| <b>2</b> | Front Wiper Blade .....                              | P.58  |
| <b>3</b> | Turn Signal/marker Light/Daytime Running Light ..... | P.61  |
| <b>4</b> | Outside rear view mirror .....                       | P.53  |
| <b>5</b> | Side Turn Signal Light.....                          | P.61  |
| <b>6</b> | AC/DC Charging Port. ....                            | P.31  |
| <b>7</b> | Low Beam Light.....                                  | P.59  |
| <b>8</b> | Tyre .....   | P.230 |
| <b>9</b> | High Beam Light .....                                | P.60  |

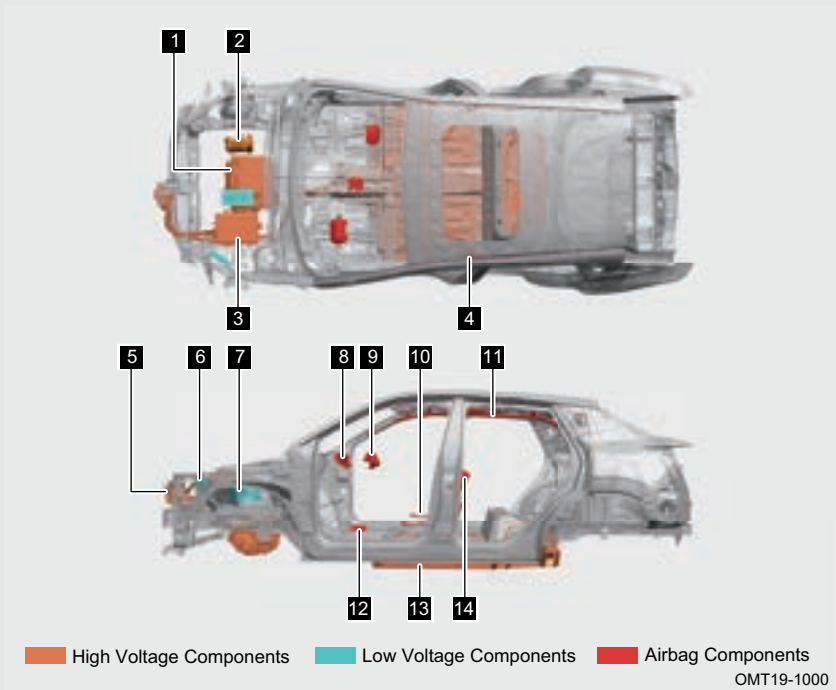


|          |                               |      |
|----------|-------------------------------|------|
| <b>1</b> | Rear Wiper Blade.....         | P.59 |
| <b>2</b> | High-Mounted Brake Light..... | P.61 |
| <b>3</b> | Back-Up Light.....            | P.61 |
| <b>4</b> | Turn Signal Light.....        | P.61 |
| <b>5</b> | License Plate Light.....      | P.59 |
| <b>6</b> | Rear Fog Light.....           | P.59 |
| <b>7</b> | Brake Light.....              | P.61 |
|          | Position Light.....           | P.59 |

# Pictorial Index



|           |   |       |
|-----------|---|-------|
| <b>1</b>  | Column Shift.....                       | P.139 |
| <b>2</b>  | Audio Button .....                      | P.110 |
| <b>3</b>  | Driver Airbag .....                     | P.148 |
| <b>4</b>  | Cruise Button .....                     | P.161 |
| <b>5</b>  | Wiper Light Combination Switch.....     | P.56  |
| <b>6</b>  | Dual Display (Instrument Cluster) ..... | P.44  |
|           | Dual Display (Audio System) .....       | P.106 |
| <b>7</b>  | Power Back Door Switch.....             | P.131 |
|           | Headlight Switch.....                   | P.59  |
|           | AC/DC Charging Port Switch. ....        | P.32  |
| <b>8</b>  | Front Compartment Cover Handle .....    | P.129 |
| <b>9</b>  | Accelerator Pedal                       |       |
| <b>10</b> | Brake Pedal                             |       |
| <b>11</b> | A/C Switch Button .....                 | P.114 |
| <b>12</b> | Glove Box.....                          | P.126 |



- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <b>1</b> Motor Assembly                | <b>2</b> Electric Compressor Assembly                 | <b>3</b> On-board Charging CDU Assembly |
| <b>4</b> Left Curtain                  | <b>5</b> Internal Wire Harness Charging Port Assembly | <b>6</b> Vehicle Controller Assembly    |
| <b>7</b> Battery                       | <b>8</b> Front Passenger Airbag Assembly              | <b>9</b> Driver Airbag Assembly         |
| <b>10</b> Front Right Seat Side Airbag | <b>11</b> Right Curtain                               | <b>12</b> Airbag Module                 |
| <b>13</b> Power Battery Pack           | <b>14</b> Front Left Seat Side Airbag                 |   |



# Table of Contents

## 1. OWNER SERVICE

|   |    |
|---|----|
| 1-1. How to Read This Manual              |    |
| How to Read This Manual.....              | 2  |
| Table of Contents .....                   | 2  |
| Pictorial Index .....                     | 2  |
| Index .....                               | 2  |
| 1-2. Symbols in the Manual                |    |
| Symbols in the Manual .....               | 3  |
| 1-3. Owner Service                        |    |
| Special Statement .....                   | 4  |
| New Vehicle Inspection .....              | 4  |
| New Energy Vehicle                        |    |
| Delivery Card.....                        | 5  |
| "Face to face"                            |    |
| Consultative Service                      |    |
| Card (Dealer).....                        | 7  |
| New Vehicle Break-in.....                 | 11 |
| 1-4. Owner's Manual Introduction          |    |
| Notes to User.....                        | 11 |
| 1-5. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle   |    |
| Safety Check .....                        | 13 |
| Before Starting Vehicle.....              | 13 |
| When Driving .....                        | 14 |
| Parking Operations.....                   | 14 |
| Parking on Slope .....                    | 14 |
| 1-6. Precautions When Driving in the Rain |    |
| When Driving on                           |    |
| Slippery Road Surfaces.....               | 17 |
| Never Drive Through                       |    |
| Flooded Water .....                       | 17 |
| 1-7. Winter Driving Precautions           |    |
| Winter Driving Tips .....                 | 18 |
| Driving on Road                           |    |
| Covered with Ice and                      |    |
| Snow.....                                 | 19 |

|                           |    |
|---------------------------|----|
| Tyre Chains .....         | 19 |
| 1-8. Cybersecurity Notice |    |
| Cybersecurity Support     |    |
| Service Update or         |    |
| Termination Notice.....   | 20 |
| Cybersecurity Notice for  |    |
| Scrapping or Resale ..... | 20 |

## 2. BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM

|                               |    |
|-------------------------------|----|
| 2-1. Battery Electric System  |    |
| Battery Electric System ..... | 22 |
| Usage Precautions for         |    |
| Power Battery .....           | 22 |
| Usage Precautions for         |    |
| Electric Vehicle .....        | 23 |
| Power Battery Recovery        |    |
| Requirements and              |    |
| Procedure Information.....    | 29 |
| 2-2. Charging Instructions    |    |
| Charging Precautions .....    | 29 |
| Charging Port Cap.....        | 31 |
| Charging Device .....         | 32 |
| AC Charging (Slow             |    |
| Charging).....                | 35 |
| DC Charging (Fast             |    |
| Charging).....                | 37 |
| New Energy.....               | 38 |
| Intelligent Recharge.....     | 40 |
| Rescue Information            |    |
| Card .....                    | 40 |

## 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

|                         |    |
|-------------------------|----|
| 3-1. Instrument Cluster |    |
| Instrument Cluster      |    |
| Overview.....           | 44 |
| Adjusting Instrument    |    |
| Cluster.....            | 45 |
| Operation/Malfunction   |    |
| Indicator.....          | 46 |

# Table of Contents

|                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 3-2. Steering Wheel              | 3-8. Child Restraint System      |
| Horn ..... 51                    | Child Restraint Systems .... 76  |
| Steering Wheel Heating           | Recommended Child                |
| (If equipped) ..... 51           | Restraint Systems ..... 78       |
| Adjusting Steering               | Top Tether ..... 78              |
| Wheel ..... 52                   | Installing Child Restraint       |
| 3-3. Rear View Mirror            | Systems ..... 80                 |
| Inside Rear View Mirror ..... 52 | Enabling and Disabling           |
| Outside Rear View                | Front Passenger Airbag ..... 84  |
| Mirror ..... 53                  | Child Presence                   |
| 3-4. Wiper System                | Detection in Rear Seat           |
| Wiper System Operation ... 56    | (If Equipped) ..... 85           |
| Replacing Wiper Blade ..... 58   | <b>4. INTERIOR FUNCTION</b>      |
| 3-5. Lighting System             | 4-1. Key Information             |
| Exterior Lighting ..... 59       | Smart Key ..... 89               |
| Interior Lighting ..... 61       | Effective Range ..... 92         |
| Headlight Leveling               | Keyless Entry ..... 93           |
| Adjusting ..... 62               | Vehicle Arming ..... 95          |
| Follow Me Home                   | Immobilizer System ..... 96      |
| Function ..... 62                | Smart Key Vehicle                |
| Smart Vehicle Locating           | Locating ..... 97                |
| Function ..... 63                | Remote Starting for              |
| Intelligent High Beam            | Smart Key ..... 97               |
| Assist (IHC) ..... 64            | 4-2. Doors                       |
| Fogging Instructions for         | Door Unlocking/Locking .... 97   |
| Light ..... 64                   | Door Mechanical Switch .... 98   |
| 3-6. Seat                        | Child Lock ..... 100             |
| Correct Sitting Posture ..... 65 | 4-3. Windows                     |
| Head Restraint ..... 66          | Power Windows ..... 100          |
| Front Seat ..... 67              | Window Remote Control            |
| Second Row Seat ..... 68         | Function ..... 102               |
| Seat Heating Function            | Window Jam Protection            |
| (If equipped) ..... 68           | Function (If Equipped) ..... 102 |
| Seat Ventilation                 | 4-4. Power Moon Roof             |
| Function (If equipped) ..... 69  | Power Moon Roof ..... 104        |
| 3-7. Seat Belt                   | Moon Roof Remote                 |
| Seat Belt ..... 70               | Control Function ..... 105       |
| Seat Belt Pretensioner ..... 75  | Moon Roof Jam                    |
|                                  | Protection Function ..... 105    |



# Table of Contents

|                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 4-5. Audio System            | 4-13. Front Compartment Cover    |
| Audio View ..... 106         | Opening/Closing Front            |
| Shortcut Menu ..... 107      | Compartment Cover ..... 129      |
| Local Settings ..... 107     | 4-14. Boot door                  |
| Vehicle Settings ..... 107   | Manual Boot door ..... 130       |
| Audio Button ..... 110       | Power Boot Door ..... 131        |
| Voice Recognition            | Boot Door Emergency              |
| Function ..... 111           | Opening ..... 136                |
| Phone-link ..... 111         |                                  |
| 4-6. Air Conditioning System | <b>5. DRIVING VEHICLE</b>        |
| Air Conditioning             | 5-1. Vehicle Power-on and        |
| System ..... 114             | Power-off                        |
| A/C Setting ..... 119        | Vehicle Power-on ..... 138       |
| Air Conditioning Heating     | Vehicle Power-off ..... 138      |
| Operation ..... 119          | 5-2. Driving Operation           |
| Air Conditioning Cooling     | Before Starting Vehicle .... 139 |
| Operation ..... 119          | 5-3. Gear Position               |
| Air Outlets Airflow          | Gear Shifting ..... 139          |
| Control ..... 121            | Column Shift Switch ..... 140    |
| Refrigeration/Warming        | Driving Mode ..... 141           |
| Function of Armrest          | Low-speed Pedestrian             |
| Box ..... 121                | Warning Sound ..... 143          |
| 4-7. Driving Recorder        | 5-4. Steering System             |
| Driving Recorder (If         | Electric Power Steering          |
| Equipped) ..... 121          | System (EPS) ..... 143           |
| Setting ..... 124            | 5-5. Brake System                |
| 4-8. Wireless Charging       | Electric Parking Brake           |
| Wireless Charging ..... 125  | System (EPB) ..... 144           |
| 4-9. Storage Space           | Auto Hold System (-              |
| Storage Space ..... 126      | AUTO HOLD) ..... 146             |
| 4-10. Power Outlet           | Foot Brake ..... 147             |
| Front Power Outlet ..... 128 | 5-6. Airbag                      |
| 4-11. USB Port               | Airbag ..... 148                 |
| Front USB Port ..... 128     |                                  |
| Rear USB Port ..... 129      |                                  |
| 4-12. Sun Visors and Vanity  |                                  |
| Mirrors                      |                                  |
| Sun Visors and Vanity        |                                  |
| Mirrors ..... 129            |                                  |

# Table of Contents

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

### 6-1. Traffic Sign Recognition System

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System ..... | 159 |
| Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) .....       | 159 |

### 6-2. Speed Limit System

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System ..... | 161 |
| Speed Control Function (SCF) .....         | 166 |

### 6-3. Lane Assist System

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Lane Assist System .....           | 167 |
| Lane Departure Warning (LDW) ..... | 168 |
| Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) ..... | 169 |

### 6-4. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System .....      | 171 |
| Door Opening Warning (DOW) System .....      | 172 |
| Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System.....     | 173 |
| Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System ..... | 173 |
| Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB) System.....  | 173 |

### 6-5. Driving Safety Assist System

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Leaving Reminder System (DAL) .....         | 174 |
| Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... | 175 |
| Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/   |     |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Front Collision Warning (FCW) System ..... | 177 |
|--|-----|

### 6-6. Intelligent High Beam Assist System (HMA)

### 6-7. Intelligent Cruise Control System

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System ..... | 181 |
| Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) .....                                     | 183 |

### 6-8. Parking Assist System

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Parking Radar Assist System .....                       | 184 |
| Parking View Monitor System (RVC) (If Equipped) .....   | 186 |
| Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM) (If Equipped) ..... | 187 |

### 6-9. Driver Monitoring System

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Driver Monitoring System (DMS) ..... | 191 |
|--------------------------------------|-----|

### 6-10. Braking Force Control System

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Integrated Braking Force Control System .....     | 193 |
| Electronic Stability Control System (ESP).....    | 193 |
| Secondary Collision Mitigation System (MCB) ..... | 195 |
| Hill Descent Control (HDC) System .....           | 195 |
| Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....                | 196 |
| Extended Function .....                           | 198 |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| 6-11. Data Privacy  | Replacing Fuse..... 221                                   |
| Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW) ..... 199    |   |
| Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)..... 200           |   |
| Emergency call (eCall) .... 200                             |   |
| <b>7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY</b>                           | <b>8. MAINTENANCE</b>                                     |
| 7-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency                   | 8-1. Repair and Maintenance                               |
| Power battery ..... 202                                     | Repair and Maintenance..... 224                           |
| Emergency Call Function..... 202                            | authorized service centre is at Your Service ..... 224    |
| Hazard Light ..... 203                                      | Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information ..... 225 |
| Reflective Vest ..... 203                                   | Safety Check ..... 225                                    |
| Warning Triangle ..... 204                                  | 8-2. Normal Maintenance                                   |
| Spare Tools ..... 204                                       | Normal Maintenance..... 226                               |
| Jack label..... 204   | Vehicle Storage..... 227                                  |
| 7-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling                             | Service and Maintenance of Power Battery..... 227         |
| If You Have a Flat Tyre While Driving (Spare Tyre)..... 205 | Service and Maintenance of Battery ... 228                |
| If Battery is Depleted..... 209                             | Normal Maintenance..... 228                               |
| 7-3. Towing   | Checking reducer oil ..... 229                            |
| Towing ..... 211  | Checking Brake Fluid Level ..... 229                      |
| Weight Limit ..... 212                                      | Checking Coolant Level ..... 229                          |
| Towing Hook..... 213  | Checking Tyres ..... 230                                  |
| Tyre..... 216   | Tyre Rotation ..... 232                                   |
| Safety Chain..... 216                                       | Checking Air Conditioning Filter ..... 232                |
| Towing Light ..... 216                                      | Checking Windshield Washer Fluid ..... 233                |
| Trailer Brake ..... 216                                     | Checking Wiper Blades ... 233                             |
| Impact on Mileage ..... 216                                 | 8-3. Regular Maintenance                                  |
| Towing Hint ..... 217                                       | Regular Maintenance..... 234                              |
| Towing Vehicle ..... 218                                    |   |
| Installing Towing Eyelet... 219                             | <b>9. SPECIFICATION</b>                                   |
| 7-4. Fuse   | 9-1. Label Location                                       |
| Fuse Box ..... 220  | Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) ..... 238             |
| Checking Fuse..... 221                                      | Vehicle Product Label .... 239                            |

# Table of Contents

|   |     |  |     |
|---|-----|--|-----|
| Front Drive Motor<br>Number.....                    | 239 | Suspension System.....   | 244 |
| 9-2. Vehicle Specifications                         |     | Wheel Alignment.....   | 244 |
| Vehicle Dimensions .....                            | 240 | Tyres .....  | 245 |
| Vehicle Type .....                                  | 241 | Battery.....   | 247 |
| Vehicle Weight.....                                 | 241 | Light Bulb Specification ...   | 247 |
| Vehicle Performance.....                            | 242 | Measurement Range of<br>Vehicle Overall Size<br>Excluding Following<br>Components..... | 248 |
| Drive Motor .....                                   | 242 | Your Rights.....   | 249 |
| Power Battery .....                                 | 243 | Contact Us .....   | 249 |
| Power Battery Cells .....                           | 243 |  |     |
| On-board Charger<br>Performance<br>Parameters ..... | 244 |  |     |

## ALPHABETICAL INDEX

|  |  |    |
|--|--|----|
| 1-1. How to Read This Manual               | Before Starting Vehicle.....                       | 13 |
| How to Read This Manual .....              | When Driving.....                                  | 14 |
| Table of Contents .....                    | Parking Operations.....                            | 14 |
| Pictorial Index.....                       | Parking on Slope.....                              | 14 |
| Index.....                                 |  |    |
| 1-2. Symbols in the Manual                 | 1-6. Precautions When Driving in<br>the Rain       |    |
| Symbols in the Manual .....                | When Driving on Slippery<br>Road Surfaces.....     | 17 |
| 1-3. Owner Service                         | Never Drive Through<br>Flooded Water .....         | 17 |
| Special Statement .....                    | 1-7. Winter Driving                                |    |
| New Vehicle Inspection .....               | Precautions  |    |
| New Energy Vehicle                         | Winter Driving Tips .....                          | 18 |
| Delivery Card .....                        | Driving on Road Covered<br>with Ice and Snow ..... | 19 |
| "Face to face"                             | Tyre Chains.....                                   | 19 |
| Consultative Service                       | 1-8. Cybersecurity Notice                          |    |
| Card (Dealer) .....                        | Cybersecurity Support                              |    |
| New Vehicle Break-in.....                  | Service Update or                                  |    |
| 1-4. Owner's Manual Introduction           | Termination Notice .....                           | 20 |
| Notes to User .....                        | Cybersecurity Notice for                           |    |
| 1-5. Precautions Before Driving<br>Vehicle | Scrapping or Resale .....                          | 20 |
| Safety Check.....                          |  |    |

# 1. OWNER SERVICE

## 1-1. How to Read This Manual

### How to Read This Manual

---

There are three ways for you to find the information you need in this manual. Here is a brief introduction of each one.

### Table of Contents

---

The main Table of Contents will tell you which chapter of the Owner's Manual contains the information you need and what page to find it on.

### Pictorial Index

---

The Pictorial Index is a helpful tool to find the required information quickly, especially if you are not familiar with the component name.

### Index

---

This is the fastest method for you to find the information you need. The index contains a complete listing of all the important vehicle terminologies.

## 1-2. Symbols in the Manual

## Symbols in the Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to draw your attention to particularly important information. In order to minimize the risks as much as possible, please read the instructions on these symbols carefully before driving, and make sure to follow them.

 **WARNING**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle, personal injury or even death.

 **CAUTION**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle and its equipment, reducing the vehicle's life span.

 **ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION**

Indicates that the waste must be handled or disposed according to the local environmental protection regulations, otherwise, the environment will be contaminated.

 **READ**

Indicates that the relevant chapter in this manual must be read before any operation.

WARNING and CAUTION relating to personal safety and vehicle safety in this manual are very important. Make sure everyone in the vehicle follows these instructions carefully in order to both enjoy your driving experience and to keep your vehicle in optimum condition.

# 1. OWNER SERVICE

## 1-3. Owner Service

### Special Statement

---

- Thank you for purchasing new energy battery electric vehicle. In order to use your vehicle correctly and protect your rights, please take the time to read this manual carefully.
- This manual provides important instructions and tips on daily driving and normal maintenance to familiarize you with the handling of the vehicle. The more you know about your vehicle, the more you can ensure the safety, economy and enjoyment of driving.
- Any improper operation and usage may damage the vehicle, and may also result in the loss of your maintenance or warranty rights.
- Extreme environments (such as below  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  or above  $40^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) may cause damage to critical parts of the vehicle (such as power battery) or even make it unable to drive.
- When power battery of vehicle touches the ground, vehicle's collided or soaked in water, serious malfunction alarms signal (such as power battery over voltage, over temperature, poor insulation and charging socket over temperature, etc.) are displayed on instrument cluster and power battery case and connector are deformed or cracked seriously, please contact new energy vehicle authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
- Regular maintenance helps to maintain vehicle performance and second-hand value. Authorized service centres all over the country have many maintenance experts who can provide services at any time. Professionally trained serviceman at each new energy vehicle authorized service centre can properly repair your vehicle and on-board equipment. The spare parts provided by authorized service centres are also the genuine spare parts.
- This manual describes that the maximum equipment range to be installed on this vehicle by printing time, which is all standard and optional configurations of this vehicle. Some equipment is supplied in future or only available for certain destinations. Therefore, some items in the manual may not be available in your vehicle.

### New Vehicle Inspection

---

- Service centre of new energy vehicle has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations before the vehicle is delivered to you.
- New energy vehicle authorized service centre should fill delivery date in inspection certificate and affix the official seal of dealer.
- Service station will inspect whole vehicle performance for you in accordance with "New Energy Vehicle Delivery Card", which will be signed by salesman and user. Also, service consultant will introduce basic operation of vehicle.



## New Energy Vehicle Delivery Card

| Type                         | No. | Items   | Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly |                             |
|------------------------------|-----|---|---|-----------------------------|
|                              |     |   | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Vehicle Performance          | 1   | VIN code, drive motor number and nameplate etc.   | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 2   | Whole vehicle locks and keys  | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 3   | All lights inspection   | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 4   | Whole vehicle glasses   | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 5   | Speedometer, power gauge, power battery charge meter, driving mileage meter   | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 6   | Tyre, spare tools and user manual, reflective vest  | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 7   | Seat belt, seat, A/C switch and outlet, storage box and sun visor, phone wireless charger                                       | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 8   | Glass regulator, rear view mirror, wiper, washer, horn, audio system and antenna, panoramic moon roof, parking radar            | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 9   | Seat, seat belt, A/C switch and outlet, glove box and sun visor   | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 10  | Window, rear view mirror, windshield wiper and washer, battery, parking radar system, horn, moon roof, audio system and antenna | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Basic Knowledge of Operation | 1   | Power battery charging operation and precautions  | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 2   | Normal operation during break-in period   | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 3   | Each light operation  | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 4   | Know warning light and indicator  | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 5   | Correct maintenance period/mileage  | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                              | 6   | Vehicle maintenance in winter/summer  | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |

## 1. OWNER SERVICE

| Type   | No. | Items   | Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly |                             |
|--|-----|---|---|-----------------------------|
|  | 7   | Thorough understanding of the cooling system and correct usage of the coolant | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|  | 8   | Correct operation of air conditioning   | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|  | 9   | Precautions for vehicle starting  | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|  | 10  | Correct operation of audio system   | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|  | 11  | Correct usage of moon roof  | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
|  | 12  | Precautions for vehicle starting, driving                                     | YES <input type="checkbox"/>                | NO <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Signature of Sales Personnel: Date: Signature of User: Date: |     |   |   |                             |

**"Face to face" Consultative Service Card (Dealer)****Table 1(Service centre Retention)**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Name of User: Vehicle Model: Date of Purchase:   |  |
| Sales & Servicing Department: Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):                               |  |
| The following items should be confirmed by the user:   |  |
| I . Confirmation of Vehicle Deliver Items (Mark a "√" for Yes and a "x" for No)                  |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have introduced basic operation of the vehicle, and performed delivery inspection                              |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have explained warranty policies   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have explained driving precautions   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have explained importance of regular maintenance and the maintenance interval time/mileage                     |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have explained the importance of maintaining/repairing vehicle at new energy vehicle authorized service centre |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have delivered User Manual to the users and reminded them to read it   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have informed service hotline function and usage method to new energy vehicle company                          |
| II . "Face to face" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a "√" for Yes and a "x" for No) |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | If you have questions and demands, consult your service consultant   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | The service consultant is the only person authorized by service centre to communicate                          |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Your service consultant is dedicated to serve you: "Face to face"  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | If user is not satisfied with the current service consultant, user can select a new one                        |
| III. Main Work Introduction of Service Consultant (Mark a "√" for "Yes" and a "x" for "No")      |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Service reception during service and maintenance   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Regular maintenance reminder return visit  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Regular greeting return visit  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Service activity reminding return visit  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Important festival greetings   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Complaint acceptance.  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Answer the service/maintenance consultation  |

## 1. OWNER SERVICE

|  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Service/maintenance booking |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Annual inspection reminders |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Any other customer needs    |
| IV. "Face to face" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment |                             |
| Service Consultant Business Card                                   |                             |
| Signature of User/Date:  |                             |
| Signature of Service Consultant/Date:                              |                             |

**Table 2 (customer retention)**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Name of User: Vehicle model: Date of Purchase:   |  |
| Sales & Servicing Department: Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):                               |  |
| The following items should be confirmed by the user:   |  |
| I . Confirmation of Vehicle Deliver Items (Mark a "√" for Yes and a "x" for No)                  |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have introduced basic operation of the vehicle, and performed delivery inspection                              |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have explained warranty policies   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have explained driving precautions   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have explained importance of regular maintenance and the maintenance interval time/mileage                     |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have explained the importance of maintaining/repairing vehicle at new energy vehicle authorized service centre |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have delivered User Manual to the users and reminded them to read it   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Have informed service hotline function and usage method to new energy vehicle company                          |
| II . "Face to face" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a "√" for Yes and a "x" for No) |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | If you have questions and demands, consult your service consultant   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | The service consultant is the only person authorized by service centre to communicate                          |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Your service consultant is dedicated to serve you: "Face to face"  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | If user is not satisfied with the current service consultant, user can select a new one                        |
| III. Main Work Introduction of Service Consultant (Mark a "√" for "Yes" and a "x" for "No")      |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Service reception during service and maintenance   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Regular maintenance reminder return visit  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Regular greeting return visit  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Service activity reminding return visit  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Important festival greetings   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Complaint acceptance.  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Answer the service/maintenance consultation  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Service/maintenance booking  |

## 1. OWNER SERVICE

|   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/>  | Annual inspection reminders    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>  | Other affairs customer demands |
| IV. "Face to face" Constlative Service Relationship Establishment |                                |
| Service Consultant Business Card                                  |                                |
| Signature of User/Date:   |                                |
| Signature of Service Consultant/Date:                             |                                |

## New Vehicle Break-in

Due to machining and assembly errors, when using your new vehicle at initial stages, friction resistance between moving parts of a new vehicle is much bigger than normal. The break-in effect of initial use will have a great impact on the vehicle's life, operation reliability and economy, so the use of new vehicle must strictly enforce the break-in regulations (The break-in period is 1,864 mile (3,000 km) in general).

### **Break-in regulations in the first 621 mile (1,000 km):**

Driving speed should not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h).

### **Break-in regulations between 621 mile (1,000 km) to 932 mile (1,500 km):**

Gradually increase to the maximum vehicle speed for driving.

### **Precautions after break-in:**

When starting to use new tyres, the best adhesion is not available. Therefore, new tyres also need break-in, so the vehicle should be driven slowly and especially carefully within the first 62 mile (100 km).

New brake lining also needs to be broken in, because the brake cannot provide ideal brake friction during the first 124mile (200 km) of driving. If braking effect is bit poor at this stage, depress the pedal with more force. This condition also applies to each replacement of braking lining later.

the specified torque. Also, if wheel has been replaced or wheel nuts have been loosened, tighten wheel nuts again to the specified torque after driving for 497 mile (800 km).

## 1-4. Owner's Manual Introduction

### Notes to User

1. The vehicle is a battery electric vehicle, the working principle and characteristics of many parts and systems are very different from those of traditional fuel vehicles. Therefore, it is important to carefully read the instructions in this manual for your personal safety and the safe use of the vehicle. Ignoring these instructions may cause serious consequences to the safety of the drivers and passengers and the performance of the vehicle. And may also result in the loss of your maintenance or warranty rights.
2. The vehicle is equipped with two kinds of batteries, one is the power battery, which is used to supply power to the motor to drive the vehicle; The other is a 12 V battery (referred to as low voltage battery) located in the front compartment, its function is the same as the traditional fuel vehicle battery, which is used to supply power for headlight, audio, horn and other low voltage electrical system. The power of low voltage battery comes from the power battery.

## 1. OWNER SERVICE

3. The vehicle is driven by battery electric and does not need to be powered by an engine, which is the main difference from traditional fuel vehicles. This vehicle uses the power battery to store the electric energy, the power battery should be fully charged as soon as possible before running. The power battery is in a state of gradual discharge during driving. When the power battery is low, it must be charged. Otherwise the vehicle cannot drive.
4. Do not touch high voltage components with bare hands when the high voltage is not disconnected. High voltage components include: Drive motor controller, power wire harness device, on-board charger, high voltage main cable, fast charging plug, fast charging socket, power battery, drive motor, slow charging socket and slow charging plug. High voltage cables in the vehicle are wrapped with orange bellows, please pay attention to identification.
5. The vehicle is equipped with anti-lock brake system, directly depress brake pedal fully under emergency braking, do not depress brake pedal lightly.
6. The vehicle can use an external power supply to charge power battery. In addition, when the vehicle is braking, the drive motor converts kinetic energy of the vehicle into electrical energy and is stored in the power battery, thereby extending the vehicle's driving mileage, which is called energy recovery.
7. The vehicle is equipped with creeping function, that is, when the vehicle is in a drivable state (READY indicator comes on) and the gear position is in D/R, release brake pedal, electronic parking brake is automatically released, and the vehicle will slowly move forward or backward.
8. Check tyre wear and tyre pressure frequently as recommended in this manual.
9. Please use the oil recommended in this manual and maintain it according to the manual requirements, which will effectively extend the service life of the vehicle.
10. The vehicle is equipped with airbag. In order to ensure the safety of children, never install rearward-facing child restraint system in seat protected by front airbag (active state).
11. In order to ensure driving safety, never remove vehicle parts, especially chassis parts. Because some fasteners of the vehicle are coated with anti-loosening media, they cannot be reused after removal.
12. Never modify or install equipment to products of the company. Our company can assume no responsibility for direct or indirect losses resulting from this.
13. Do not flush chassis connector with water when cleaning the vehicle.
14. The vehicle environment should be free of corrosive, explosives and gasses that destroy insulation or conductive dust, and the temperature should not be too high or too low.



15. Never touch positive and negative poles of the power battery with both hands at any time.
16. Never crush, pierce or burn the power battery to destroy the power battery.
17. Never process and store used power batteries by yourself, which will be processed by new energy vehicle authorized service centre

## 1-5. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

### Safety Check

---

It is better to do a safety check before driving vehicle. A few minutes of checking can help ensure safe and pleasant driving.

### Before Starting Vehicle

---

#### ■ Outside vehicle

1. Tyres (including spare tyre): Check tyre pressure with a tyre pressure gauge and carefully check tyres for cuts, damage or excessive wear.
2. Wheel bolts: Make sure no wheel bolts are missing or loose.
3. Fluid leaks: After the vehicle has been parked for a while, check underneath for leaking, coolant or other fluids (Water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal).
4. Lights: Make sure the headlights, daytime running lights, brake lights, fog lights, turn signal lights and other lights are working properly.

#### ■ Inside vehicle

1. Spare tools: Make sure you have spare tools, such as jack, wheel bolt wrench and spare tyre.
2. Seat belts: Check if the buckles can be fastened securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
3. Instrument cluster and controls: Make especially sure the malfunction indicator lights, indicator lights, and controls are working properly.
4. Brakes: Make sure the pedal has enough clearance.

#### ■ Front Compartment

1. Spare fuses: Make sure spare fuses are available. All the fuses with amperage ratings designated on the fuse box cover should be provided.
2. Coolant level: Make sure coolant level is proper.
3. Battery and cables: Check for corroded or loose terminals and a cracked case. Check the cables for good condition and connections.
4. Wiring: Check for damaged, loose or broken wires.

#### ■ Bonnet

## 1. OWNER SERVICE

Make sure the bonnet is locked completely before driving. Otherwise, the bonnet may tilt up and block front view when vehicle is moving, which could lead to an accident.

### When Driving

1. Gauges and meters: Make sure the gauges and meters are working properly.
2. Brakes: At a safe place, check that the vehicle does not pull to one side when the brakes are applied.
3. Other abnormal conditions: Check for loose parts and leaks. Listen for abnormal noises.

### Parking Operations

Proper parking is an important part of safe driving. Vehicle should be parked in a place with wide road, good view and no impact on traffic. Parking operation steps are as follows:

1. Depress brake pedal until the vehicle is completely stopped.
2. Confirm that the electronic parking is enabled.
3. Move shift lever to "P" position.
4. Power off the vehicle.

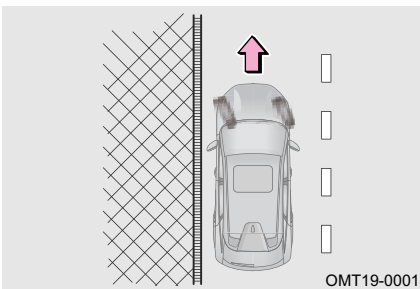
#### CAUTION

When you leave vehicle, make sure to lock your vehicle and carry the keys with you.

### Parking on Slope

Parking vehicle on a slope is mainly enabled by the force of the parking brake. Failing to apply park brake or any brake malfunction may cause the vehicle to slide down a slope and personal injury or damage to vehicle. When parking on a slope, it is better to face the tyres towards one side of vehicle, to prevent vehicle from moving accidentally.

#### ■ Parking on downhill with curb

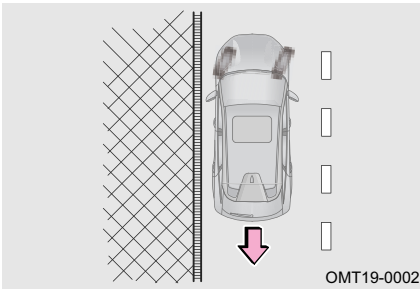


If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the left to ensure that the front part of the front right wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding forward down the slope, then apply the parking brake.



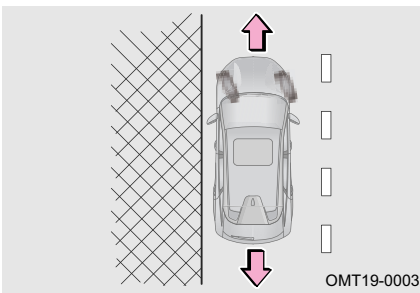
## 1. OWNER SERVICE

### ■ Parking on uphill with curb



If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the right to ensure that the rear part of the front right wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding back down the slope, then apply the parking brake.

### ■ Parking on uphill or downhill (without curb)



If there is no curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel hard left to prevent the vehicle driving into the center of the road or sliding down the slope. Turn the steering wheel to the side of the road, so the vehicle is facing away from the center of the road when moving, then apply the parking brake.

### ■ Carrying passengers

Before driving, make sure all passengers sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Do not let the passengers sit in the places where there are no seats and seat belts, as they are likely to face serious injury during a collision.

### ■ Locking the vehicle

- When leaving the vehicle unattended, carry smart key with you and lock all the doors, even if parking the vehicle in the garage or on the road outside your house.
- Vehicle should be parked in bright and spacious places as much as possible, and do not expose valuable items.

## 1-6. Precautions When Driving in the Rain

### When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces

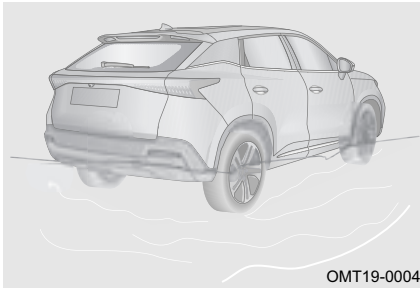
Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, windows may become fogged-up and roads will be slippery.

- Do not drive at high speed when driving on a motorway in rain, because there may be a layer of water between tyres and road surface, preventing steering system and brakes from operating properly.

#### CAUTION

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering on slippery road surfaces may cause tyre slippage and reduce your ability to control vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress brake pedal to make sure brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake lining may prevent brakes from functioning properly. If brake lining on one side is wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

### Never Drive Through Flooded Water



The vehicle could be seriously damaged when driving on a road that has flooded.

## 1. OWNER SERVICE

### CAUTION

- Never drive through water that is deeper than wheel rim.
- Water can wash the grease from the wheel bearing, causing rusting and premature abrasion.
- Driving through water may cause damage to your vehicle drive train components. Always visually inspect your vehicle's fluids for signs of leakage after driving through water. Do not continue to operate vehicle if any fluid leaks, as this may result in further damage.
- Vehicle traction and braking performance will decrease while driving through water. The braking distance will increase. Sand and mud that have accumulated around the brake discs may affect the braking efficiency and may damage the brake system components. After driving through water, slightly depress the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes off.

### 1-7. Winter Driving Precautions

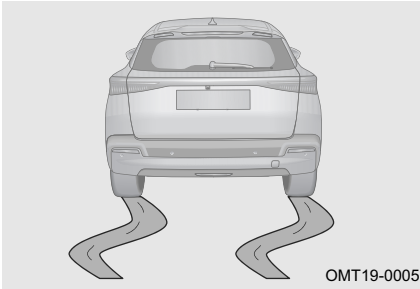
#### Winter Driving Tips

- Coolant: Make sure that coolant has anti-freezing function. Only use coolant recommended.
- Battery and cables: Low temperature will decrease power of battery. Sufficient power should be stored in battery for starting in winter.
- Door locks: Avoid door locks being frozen. De-icing agent or glycerin should be sprayed into door lock holes.
- Washer fluid: Use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at authorized service centre and most vehicle component distributors.
- Mudguards: Avoid ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. Failure to do so may cause difficult steering. When driving in cold weather, you should often stop vehicle to check for ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. It is recommended that you should take some necessary emergency items with you according to different driving destinations. Items that need to be put in vehicle: Tyre chains, window snow scraper, sand or salt bag, signal flasher, shovel, jumper cables, etc.

### CAUTION

- Do not use water as a substitute for coolant.
- Do not use coolant or other alternative washer fluid, otherwise vehicle paint will be damaged.

## Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow



Rapid acceleration on slippery road surfaces, such as snow or ice covered roads, may cause the rear wheels slipping to right or left. Therefore, please drive at low speed and operate carefully.

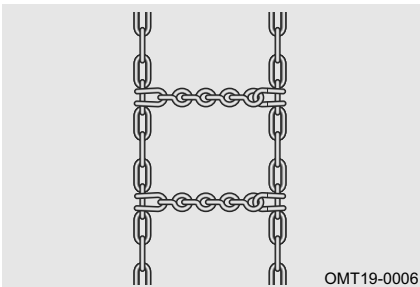
It is possible to build up a layer of water film between the tyre and road surface when driving on wet or slushy roads. This may prevent the steering and braking from operating properly. It is recommended that you enable ESP function on this occasion.

### ■ Driving out silt and ice and snow road

If drive wheel is stuck in silt or ice and snow, please attempt to shake vehicle at low speed and drive forward and backward repeatedly. Shift the shift lever between forward position and reverse position several times and depress accelerator pedal slightly.

## Tyre Chains

Purchase a set of tyre chains that match size of the vehicle tyres. Pay attention to the following precautions when installing and removing chains:



1. Follow local regulations when using chains;
2. Install and remove tyre chains in a safe location;
3. Install tyre chains by following the instructions provided;
4. Follow local regulations when using chains;

5. It is recommended to use the beef tendon chains or rubber chains with a thickness not exceeding 12 mm, otherwise, tyres, rims, drive system, brake system and wheel guard plates may be damaged. Vehicle damages resulting from improper use of chains are not covered by warranty;
6. Please consult authorized service centre for details about wheels, tyre size.

## 1. OWNER SERVICE

### CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Regulations regarding the use of tyre chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing tyre chains;
- Be sure to use chains that are suitable for your vehicle. Installing chain will affect vehicle handling, please drive carefully. Using improper chains or improper installation of chains may cause an accident and lead to injuries;
- Please follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the chains to install and remove chains, vehicle should be parked in a safe place before installation and removal. Be sure to turn off the vehicle before installing chains (automatic transmission is in P position), place the traffic warning signs if necessary;
- Do not drive vehicle at more than 18mph (30 km/h) when chains are installed on vehicle, or refer to the vehicle speed limit specified by the manufacturer of chains, whichever is lower. It should avoid dangerous road conditions such as bumps, potholes, sharp turns etc. when installing chains, do not turn steering wheel sharply, lock brake urgently, accelerate or decelerate suddenly etc.

### 1-8. Cybersecurity Notice

#### Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice

The company has provided cybersecuritysupport services in the corresponding software and equipment of the Internet of Vehicles service, and regularly or irregularly updates or terminates this service.

We can notify customers through website announcements, emails, in-vehicle systems, mobile phone text messages, voice calls, etc. according to the specific content of the notification.

Email, SMS, and voice calls will be sent to the email address and mobile phone listed in the customer's account registration information.

#### Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale

Before you resell or scrap the vehicle, that is, when you no longer hold the vehicle, you should clear the personal information in the vehicle terminal by yourself.

The company does not assume any responsibility if the personal information of the vehicle terminal is leaked to a third party due to improper operation.



## BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM

|  |  |
|--|--|
| 2-1. Battery Electric System   | Charging Port Cap..... 31              |
| Battery Electric System ..... 22   | Charging Device ..... 32               |
| Usage Precautions for<br>Power Battery ..... 22                              | AC Charging (Slow<br>Charging)..... 35 |
| Usage Precautions for<br>Electric Vehicle ..... 23                           | DC Charging (Fast<br>Charging)..... 37 |
| Power Battery Recovery<br>Requirements and<br>Procedure Information ..... 29 | New Energy ..... 38                    |
| 2-2. Charging Instructions   | Intelligent Recharge ..... 40          |
| Charging Precautions ..... 29  | Rescue Information Card..... 40        |

## 2. BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM

### 2-1. Battery Electric System

#### Battery Electric System

---

##### **Battery electric vehicle introduction**

This is a battery electric vehicle, the working principle and characteristics of many parts and systems are very different from those of traditional fuel vehicles. Therefore, it is important to carefully read the instructions in this manual for your personal safety and the safe use of the vehicle. Ignoring these instructions may cause serious consequences to the safety of the drivers and passengers and the performance of the vehicle, and may also result in the loss of your maintenance or warranty rights.

The vehicle is driven by battery electric and does not need to be powered by an engine, which is the main difference from traditional fuel vehicles. This vehicle uses the power battery to store the electric energy, the power battery must be fully charged before running. In the process of vehicle driving, the power battery is in a state of gradual discharge. When the power battery is low, it must be charged. Otherwise the vehicle cannot drive. The vehicle adopts two charging methods: AC slow charging and DC fast charging. AC slow charging includes slow charging with special charging pile and slow charging with portable emergency charging cable.

#### Usage Precautions for Power Battery

---

With the increase of service life and charging times, the power battery capacity will decline and driving mileage will be reduced, which is normal. Driving mileage and power battery capacity are affected by driving habits, parking condition, charging way and power battery temperature etc. Please observe the following suggestions:

1. When the vehicle is prompted to charge, charging should be performed as soon as possible to protect the cycle service life of the power battery.
2. The service life of power battery is related to discharge depth. In order to avoid deep discharging from power battery, the power battery should be charged in time when the vehicle is out of use, which is conducive to cycle service use of power battery and improves its service life. Avoid the situation that the battery is not charged for a long time after charging prompt occurs, it may damage to the power battery.
3. Drive the vehicle gently. Accelerating and decelerating quickly are not conducive to use of power battery during driving. It is recommended to keep slow acceleration and avoid sharp deceleration as far as possible, which can significantly improve the driving mileage and service life of the vehicle.
4. Avoid parking the vehicle in high temperature environment for a long time. When parking vehicle in summer, please park the vehicle in a cool environment to avoid direct sunlight and keep away from heat source.

5. Avoid parking the vehicle in low temperature environment, if the external temperature is very low, the internal of power battery may freeze, resulting in charging failure and failure to provide electricity to the vehicle. Please park the vehicle in warm environment in time.
6. The charging time is long when using AC charging (slow charging), but it is helpful for protecting the power battery and extending the service life of the power battery. The charging time is short when using DC charging (fast charging), but it will affect the service life of power battery.

 READ

Frequent use of fast charging will affect the service life of power battery. Slow charging is recommended.

7. During charging with DC fast charging, it is recommended to unplug the charging cable when charging reaches 90%, and do not charge to full charge, which is helpful for protecting the power battery and extending the service life of the power battery.
8. When the temperature is high in summer, the number of times of fast charging should be reduced or not used, which is helpful for protecting the power battery and extending the service life of the battery.
9. If vehicle is parked for a long time, keep the charge of power battery at 50%, and disconnect negative cable from low voltage battery. It is recommended to charge once a month. Please connect negative cable to low voltage battery before charging.
10. AC slow charging and fully charged at least once a month, which helps to correct the power battery.
11. Never use power battery in vehicle for other purposes.

### Usage Precautions for Electric Vehicle

This vehicle uses high voltage up to several hundred volts. Please follow the warning label on the vehicle. To ensure your safety, please pay attention to the following points during using:

1. Please observe warning label attached on vehicle parts;
2. Before driving vehicle, make sure to pull out charging cables, the charging port is properly closed, and check if warning light and indicator on instrument cluster are normal;
3. When cleaning vehicles or on rainy days, close the doors, front compartment, boot door to avoid water directly wet high voltage system and power battery, failure to do so cause short circuit of high voltage system.
4. When leaving the vehicle, always shift the gear position to P to avoid vehicle from moving accidentally.

## 2. BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM

5. When the vehicle is in READY state and the gear position is in D/R, if the brake pedal is not depressed, the vehicle will creep.

### READ

- When vehicle is charged in low temperature, the charging time will be extended.
- When vehicle drives in low temperature, because discharging capacity of the power battery will be reduced, the power performance and driving mileage of the vehicle will be reduced, and it can be recovered after the temperature rises.
- The vehicle is powered by the power battery to drive the vehicle. Frequent heavy acceleration will consume power battery faster than driving at a steady speed.
- During slow charging, the front compartment fan and water pump may work, which is a normal phenomenon.

### Tips for using in high and low temperature

#### ■ Tips for using in high temperature

1. Try to park the vehicle in a cool place or underground garage to charge. Too hot environment is not conducive to charging status and affects the service life of power battery and on-board charger.
2. During use, the charging time and frequency should be grasped accurately according to actual situation. Avoid affecting the service life of power battery due to deep discharge.

#### ■ Tips for using in low temperature

1. Try to park the vehicle under shelter, sunny place or garage to charge, it is better to charge in the insulation of garage;
2. Please charge the vehicle immediately after it is out of use. The charging of the power battery is greatly affected by the temperature. After driving the vehicle for a certain distance, the power battery temperature will rise. At this time, the charging speed will be increased, which can save the heating time of the power battery at low temperature;
3. When the power battery is fully charged, green charging indicator comes on, unplug the charging cable when the vehicle is used;
4. When the ambient temperature where the vehicle is located is lower than  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$ , try to avoid using fast charging. It is recommended to select slow charging to keep your power battery in optimal state.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not use the fast charging when the ambient temperature is too low or too high.
- The charging time will be extended in low temperature environment. When charging in low temperature environment, the power battery needs to be heated, and the charging energy consumption will increase, which is normal.

**Precautions for using vehicles in extremely hot and cold environments**

The optimal ambient temperature for the vehicle is about 25°C. Using and parking the vehicle in extremely hot, extremely cold environment will have a certain impact on the vehicle function and performance. If the vehicle must be used and parked in this environment, please read carefully and follow the following requirements.

**■ Extremely hot environment**

1. Do not park the vehicle in high temperature environment (> 40°C) for a long time. When parking vehicle, please park the vehicle in a cool environment and avoid charging in direct sunlight.
2. When the ambient temperature is higher than 40°C, the vehicle power may be limited or the charging time may be extended, which is normal.

**■ Extremely cold environment**

1. When the vehicle is parked in an extremely cold environment, please use slow charging immediately. If vehicle cannot be charged in time, Power battery should not be less than 60%.
2. Do not park the vehicle in low temperature environment (< -20°C) for a long time, and park the vehicle in warm environment in time; When the ambient temperature is below -25°C, the vehicle may not be able to drive. At this point, it is necessary to preheat before driving.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Any improper operation of the vehicle by the user may damage the vehicle, and may also result in your vehicle losing maintenance and warranty rights. Especially in extreme environments (such as below -20°C or above 40 °C), it may cause damage to critical components of your vehicle (such as power battery), or even make the vehicle unable to drive.

**■ Driving safety tips on road covered with ice and snow**

1. Check if brake system is normal before driving;
2. Slow down on road covered with ice and snow to avoid rapid acceleration;
3. Keep a safe distance and drive along the track of the vehicle ahead;

## 2. BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM

4. Avoid a sudden braking, mainly depress the brake pedal lightly;
5. Slow down in advance when turning and turn the big corner at a slower speed;
6. Erect the wiper when parking to prevent freezing.

### CAUTION

Due to the corrosiveness of snowmelt salt, it can corrode the vehicle paint, chassis, electrical circuit and line. Therefore, after driving on the road sprayed with snowmelt salt, the vehicle should be cleaned in time to prevent corrosion.

### Malfunction handling

If any of the following conditions occurs, it will be regarded as a failure. Please contact new energy vehicle authorized service centre for inspection and repair:

1. After the power battery is fully charged, power battery can not be connected when the vehicle starts, and charging cable connection indicator and power battery cut-off indicator come on; Please check if the external charging cable is unplugged. The vehicle cannot drive when the external charging cable is connected.
2. The vehicle has no faults, but cannot start (READY indicator does not come on): Please confirm if the gear position is in P. If it is not in P, please return to P before attempting to start the vehicle.
3. After the vehicle starts, the gear position on instrument cluster flashes, and the vehicle cannot be driven. The shift operation is incorrect, please follow the regulations and gently depress the brake pedal to shift.
4. The power limit indicator comes on (this indicator will also come on when the power battery temperature is too high), indicating that the power performance is reduced and the maximum vehicle speed is limited; Vehicle system malfunction indicator, power battery malfunction indicator, motor and controller malfunction indicator come on, indicating that the vehicle cannot drive. Please contact new energy vehicle authorized service centre for inspection and repair in time.
5. When other faults occur, please contact professional personnel from new energy vehicle authorized service centre for inspection and repair.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- If power battery low warning indicator comes on, please charge the vehicle as soon as possible.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long time, it is recommended to disconnect negative cable from battery of front compartment to prevent battery depleted.
- Do not park the vehicle for a long time. In order to facilitate long service life, please place the vehicle in a cool environment and store it at around 50% of its battery capacity.
- For power battery status inspection and balanced maintenance, please go to the new energy vehicle authorized service centre.

**Emergency cut-off system****■ High voltage fault automatic power-off function**

The vehicle is equipped with high voltage fault automatic power-off protection function. When high-voltage components on the vehicle are malfunctioning, the vehicle will automatically cut off the high voltage power supply in order to protect the persons in the vehicle. When the following indicators on instrument cluster come on, the vehicle will automatically cut off the high voltage power supply:

1. Insulation malfunction indicator and power battery cut-off indicator come on at the same time, it indicates that the high voltage components in the vehicle occur insulation malfunction. At this time, the vehicle will automatically cut off the high voltage.
2. Power battery malfunction indicator and power battery cut-off indicator come on at the same time, it indicates that the power battery occurs malfunction. At this time, the vehicle will automatically cut off the high voltage.
3. Vehicle system malfunction indicator and power battery cut-off indicator come on at the same time, it indicates that the vehicle system occurs malfunction. At this time, the vehicle will automatically cut off the high voltage.
4. Motor and controller malfunction indicator and power battery cut-off indicator come on at the same time, it indicates that electric drive system occurs malfunction. At this time, the vehicle will automatically cut off the high voltage.
5. Power battery abnormal temperature indicator and power battery cut-off indicator come on at the same time, it indicates that the power battery temperature is too high. At this time, the vehicle will automatically cut off the high voltage, and vehicle can be started normally after power battery temperature decreases.

## 2. BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM

6. Power battery abnormal temperature indicator flashes and power battery cut-off indicator comes on at the same time, it indicates that the power battery temperature is too low. At this time, the vehicle will automatically cut off the high voltage, and vehicle can be started normally after power battery temperature increases.

### CAUTION

- When power-off malfunction occurs, please contact new energy vehicle authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately. When power-off malfunction occurs during driving, the vehicle will be in coasting mode. At this time, the hazard warning light should be turned on, and drive the vehicle to emergency lane or safe place, then contact new energy authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
- During or after charging, the vehicle cannot be started without pulling out the charging cable. At this time, pull out the charging cable to restart the vehicle.

### **Automatic power-off function after collision**

When vehicle is involved in a collision and the relative speed reaches the set threshold, the vehicle will automatically cut off the high voltage, and vehicle system malfunction indicator, power battery cut-off indicator, turn signal indicator on instrument cluster will come on at the same time.

### **■ Safety protection**

1. Non new energy professional personnel are strictly prohibited to remove and install the power battery.
2. Do not use organic solvent to clean the power battery housing, doing so may damage the surface insulation coating and form insulation trouble.
3. Do not put metalware together with the power battery assembly, and do not park the vehicle in an area with sparks splashing or in a flood area.

### **High temperature operating mode of power battery**

If the vehicle is used under the following conditions, it may enter high temperature operating mode:

1. The ambient temperature is high, and the vehicle is driven after being exposed to sunlight;
2. The ambient temperature is high, and the vehicle is driven after fast charging;
3. After the vehicle is driven at high speed, perform fast charging and then drive. When entering the high temperature operating mode, the instrument cluster will give a text prompt, and the power reduction indicator and the high power battery temperature indicator will come on. At this time, the power performance of the vehicle will be weakened, and the maximum speed will be limited. This is a normal phenomenon to ensure the service life of power battery. By reducing the speed of driving or parking and standing



still, the temperature of power battery can be restored to its normal state of use.

### Power Battery Recovery Requirements and Procedure Information

The power battery is installed on the vehicle chassis, which consists of lithium battery cells. Disposal at will can cause pollution and harm to the environment. According to relevant regulations, vehicle owner is obliged to hand over used power battery to recycling service centres. It is strictly forbidden to hand over used power battery to other units or individuals. The vehicle owner shall be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal or disassembly of the power battery.

Be sure to deal with the following information or requirements. For details on the recycling and disposal of power battery, please consult new energy authorized service centre.

1. Personnel requirements: The disassembly of power battery must be performed by professionals with certification qualification of power battery supplier;
2. Transportation: The power battery belongs to the 9th category of dangerous goods and must be transported by vehicles with the 9th category of dangerous goods transportation qualification;
3. Storage: The removed power battery pack should be stored in a normal temperature, dry environment, away from flammable materials, heat sources, water sources and other hazards;
4. The temporary used power battery recycling service centre for new energy vehicle is authorized by local new energy vehicle authorized service centre.

### 2-2. Charging Instructions

The charging methods of this vehicle include charging on AC charging pile (AC slow charging), charging on DC charging pile (DC fast charging), and charging on portable emergency charging cable (emergency charging).

### Charging Precautions

1. Always ensure that the selected power supply is a dedicated charging pile or a socket with a carrying current of 16A (4mm<sup>2</sup>) or above (e.g.AC socket), and the maximum applicable current of the socket and cable is greater than or equal to 16A(4mm<sup>2</sup>), so as to avoid damage to the power line due to excessive current before charging;
2. Always ensure that the charging socket is reliably grounded and protected by a leakage protector;
3. Select appropriate charging place or take necessary protective measures to avoid charging safety problems;

## 2. BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM

4. Before each charging, please be sure to check the vehicle charging port and cables for damage. If any of the above situations occur, please contact the new energy vehicle authorized service centre in time;
5. In case of any abnormal situation, do not replace or remove any parts without authorization. Please contact new energy vehicle authorized service centre in time;
6. Before charging, confirm that the gear position is in P and make sure that vehicle cannot move;
7. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle and other behaviors that may affect the charging safety during charging;
8. If it is necessary to end the charging in advance during charging, please unplug the charging cable and end the charging while ensuring safety;
9. With the influence of external factors such as service life of vehicle, ambient temperature or different local charging voltage, the charging time of vehicle will increase compared with the normal charging time;
10. When charging at low temperature environment, the battery control system automatically switches the battery heating system on and off according to the temperature of the cell during charging, so the charging time will be increased;
11. After charging, please unplug the charging cable in time, and consider that the temperature of charging plug terminal is higher, do not touch charging plug to avoid burning;
12. Under the premise that the power of charging device meets the demand of vehicle at room temperature, the DC charging time is generally fast; In high temperature and low temperature environment, in order to prolong the life of power battery effectively, the DC charging current will be reduced. And at low temperature, the power battery needs to be heated before charging, so the DC charging time will increase;
13. Before charging/discharging, please carefully check the charging/discharging connection device to ensure that the power supply device, charging/discharging cable, charging port, and charging/discharging connectors etc. are free from cable wear, rust, shell breakage or foreign objects in port and other abnormal conditions;
14. It is forbidden for minors to perform charging and discharging operations
14. It is forbidden for minors to perform charging and discharging operations or touch and use charging and discharging equipment. Charging and discharging cable is a high voltage electrical device. Do not let minors approach it when charging and discharging;
15. Medical or implantable electronic devices may be affected during charging and discharging. Please consult the electronic device manufacturer before charging and discharging to avoid affecting the normal operation of related electronic devices;

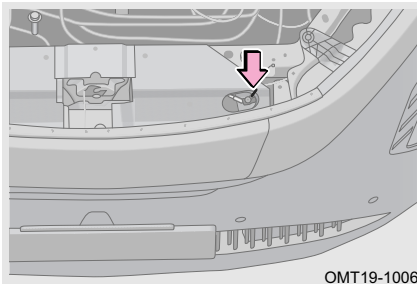
16. Please choose a safe and reliable environment for charging, and avoid charging in wet, fire and heat environments;
17. Please use special charging/discharging device for electric vehicles that meet relevant national standards. Unqualified products, removal or modification of original charging/discharging device are strictly prohibited to avoid charging safety accidents;
18. During charging and discharging, if vehicle or charging/discharging device is abnormal, stop charging and discharging immediately and contact new energy vehicle authorized service centre in time;
19. In order to prevent external factors from damaging the charging/discharging device or vehicle during charging and discharging, do not perform vehicle charging and discharging operations in harsh weather conditions such as thunderstorms, rain and snow;
20. After charging/discharging is complete, ensure that charging/discharging device is completely separated from the charging port and the charging port cap is completely closed.

### CAUTION

If abnormally powered off during charging or charging cable is not pulled out after the vehicle is fully charged, the battery may be depleted and the vehicle can not be started. This phenomenon is not a product quality problem. Please strictly observe the above charging precautions. If you have any questions, please contact new energy vehicle authorized service centre. If the charging safety problem is caused by improper use by the user, our company does not assume any legal responsibility.

## Charging Port Cap

### Manually open charging port cap

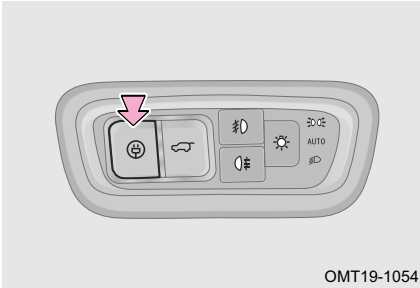


1. Open the front compartment cover;
2. Pull the charging port cap rope and the charging port cap will automatically open in sliding-up mode.

## 2. BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM

### Electrically open charging port cover

#### ■ Method 1



OMT19-1054

Press "⏻" button and the charging port cover will automatically open in sliding-up mode.

#### ■ Method 2



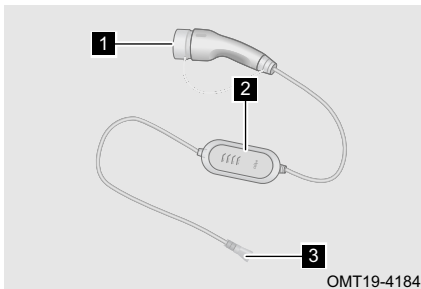
OMT19-1055

Click on the charging port cover on shortcut menu and the charging port cover will automatically open in sliding-up mode.

## Charging Device

### External wire harness charging port assembly

External wire harness charging port assembly is a charging device equipped with the vehicle. Connect the vehicle to a socket (220V/20A special AC circuit and three-hole socket) that meets the local national standard to charge the vehicle. Using special AC circuit can prevent short circuit or line trip protection due to high power when charging power battery. If special AC circuit is not used, the normal operation of other devices on the line may be effected.



OMT19-4184

**1** Charging cable

**2** Control box

**3** Charging plug (Due to market differences, the charging plug style is subject to the actual vehicle)

 **WARNING**

- It must be well grounded during use.
- Never step on, crush, drag or bend the cable.
- When charging is stopped, unplug the charging cable first and then power supply plug.
- Never use adapter cable or adapter, and never plug and unplug with power on.
- Do not disassemble and maintain without permission, otherwise the results are at your own risk.
- When not in use, insert vehicle plug dust cover completely.
- Never expose the product to flammable gas to avoid danger.
- Make sure that charging port is dry and free of foreign matters to avoid short circuit that may cause fire.
- This product is only used when the power supply is equipped with RCD short-circuit protector.
- Never destroy the product violently, drop it or place heavy objects on the product surface.
- When using this product, confirm that the plug is tightly inserted and the indicator is normal.
- This product is only used for applicable model, and should not be used in other vehicles to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- When starting vehicle, it is necessary to confirm that charging cable has been unplugged completely, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
- Never put this product in water, liquid or snow and rain. Avoid plugging or unplugging the plug with wet hands to avoid personal injuries.
- The operating temperature is  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  -  $+ 50^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Never put the product near high-temperature objects or expose it to sunlight.
- Be sure to use genuine charging cable. If other charging cables are used, the power battery may not be charged normally and cause malfunction.
- If this product cannot charge normally, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair.

## 2. BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM

### Control box indicators

| Operating/<br>Malfunctioning<br>Condition     | Power<br>Indicator<br>(Green) | Charging<br>Indicator<br>(Red) | Malfunction<br>Indicator<br>(Red) | Charging<br>Completion<br>Indicator<br>(Green) |
|---|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Initial state                                 | Remain on                     | Flash once                     | Flash once                        | Flash once                                     |
| Waiting for<br>charging mode                  | Remain on                     | Turn off                       | Turn off                          | Turn off                                       |
| Normal charging<br>mode                       | Remain on                     | Remain on                      | Turn off                          | Turn off                                       |
| Charging<br>completed                         | Remain on                     | Turn off                       | Turn off                          | Remain on                                      |
| Self-checking                                 | Remain on                     | Turn off                       | Flash                             | Turn off                                       |
| Communication<br>malfunction                  | Remain on                     | Remain on                      | Flash                             | Turn off                                       |
| Input voltage<br>overvoltage/<br>undervoltage | Remain on                     | Turn off                       | Remain on                         | Turn off                                       |
| Grounded<br>malfunction                       | Remain on                     | Turn off                       | Remain on                         | Flash  |
| Overcurrent<br>malfunction                    | Remain on                     | Flash                          | Remain on                         | Turn off                                       |
| Leakage<br>malfunction                        | Remain on                     | Turn off                       | Flash                             | Flash  |
| Over temperature<br>protection                | Remain on                     | Remain on                      | Remain on                         | Remain on                                      |

### CAUTION

Do not attempt to remove or repair control box. If above malfunctions occur, please go to authorized service centre.

### Troubleshooting common malfunctions

#### ■ Unable to charge

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.
2. Check if it is grounded well.
3. Check if voltage of power supply is normal.
4. Check if connection of vehicle is normal.

#### ■ Intermittent charging

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.

2. Check if 220 V AC is stable.
3. Check if temperature is too high.

■ Power on trip during charging

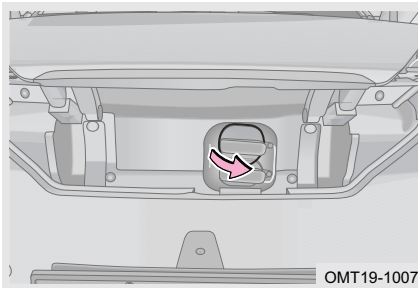
1. Check if it is grounded well.
2. Check if device is short circuit.
3. Check if total power of all electric equipment is too high.

■ Malfunction occurs each time power on when charging

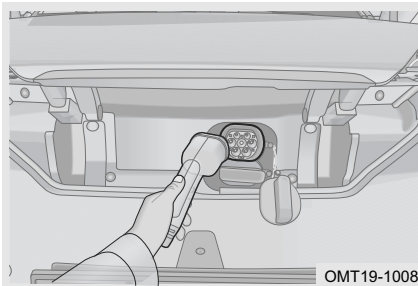
Unplug three-pin plug and charging cable, then insert and unplug them again. If malfunction still occurs, please go to authorized service centre immediately.

### AC Charging (Slow Charging)

1. Park vehicle in charging area, shifting the gear position to P and apply the parking brake;
2. Press "⊕" to open the charging port cap;



3. Move AC charging port protective cover clip to the left; to eject the charging port protective cover;



4. Remove the charging cable from AC charging pile, insert the charging cable to the AC charging port until a light sound is heard;
5. After charging is completed, press the vehicle to unlock, and pull out the charging cable from the charging port;

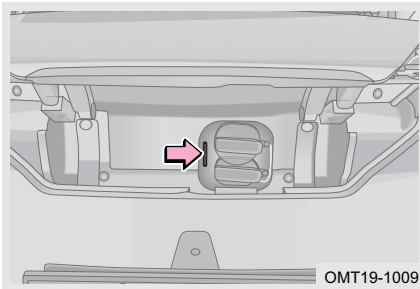
6. Close protection covers of AC charging port and charging cable, and then close charging port cap;
7. Unplug charging plug from power supply socket.

 READ

Unplug the charging cable first and then power supply plug.

## 2. BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM

### ■ Charging indicator



- Waiting for charging: Indicator remains on in yellow, indicating that charger is connected, there is no charging current output.
  - Charging: Indicator blinks in green, indicating that it is charging.
  - Charging end: Indicator remains on in green, indicating that charging is completed and charging cable is not pulled.
  - Charging malfunction: Indicator remains on in red, indicating that malfunction occurs.
- Waiting for discharging/discharging end: Indicator remains on in blue, indicating that discharging cable is connected, and it is waiting for discharging.
  - Discharging: Indicator blinks in blue, indicating that it is discharging.
  - Lighting: Indicator remains on in white, indicating that charging cable is not connected, charging port box cover is open when the network is awake, indicator comes on for 30 seconds when ambient light collects a signal that ambient light is dark.

### AC charging socket electronic lock

The vehicle AC charging socket is equipped with an electronic lock function, which prevents the charging cable from being plugged in and pulled out with electricity, and avoids charging safety problems.

### ■ Locking of electronic lock

Use 32A AC charging pile that meets the national standard for charging. After the charging cable is inserted in place and after the electronic lock is automatically locked, the vehicle will start charging.

#### WARNING

After the electronic lock is locked, if you need to remove the charging cable, please unlock the electronic lock before pulling out the cable; Do not pull the cable forcibly, so as not to damage the electronic lock or charging cable and cable other charging equipment.

### ■ Unlocking of electronic lock

Normal electronic lock unlocking is divided into the following two ways:



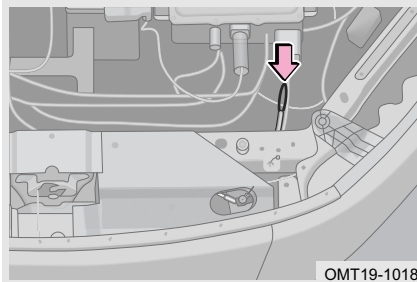
1. Press the lock button on smart key first, then press the unlock button on it to unlock the electronic lock, and gently press the mechanical lock button on the charging cable to pull out the charging cable.
2. Without using the smart key, hold the charging cable by your hand and press the button on the charging cable with your thumb. When you hear the electronic lock unlocking sound, first lift your thumb, and then quickly press the mechanical lock button on the charging cable again to pull out the charging cable.

#### READ

- If the charging cable is not pulled out after the electronic lock is unlocked, the electronic lock will be automatically relocked after several seconds.
- If the vehicle is in the unlocked state and the electronic lock is in the locked state, it is necessary to close the door and lock the vehicle before performing above electronic lock unlocking operation.

If the above unlocking method is invalid, emergency unlocking can be performed by cutting off the power supply of the charging device (for example, click stop charging on APP interface, turn off the power supply of the charging pile, press the emergency stop switch of charging pile).

#### Manually release charging cable (AC charging only)

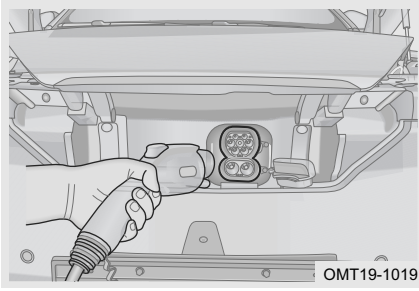


If the charging cable cannot be opened normally, open the front compartment cover and pull charging cable release cable to release charging cable manually.

#### DC Charging (Fast Charging)

1. Park vehicle in charging area, shifting the gear position to P and apply the parking brake;
2. Press "⊕" to open the charging port cover;

## 2. BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM



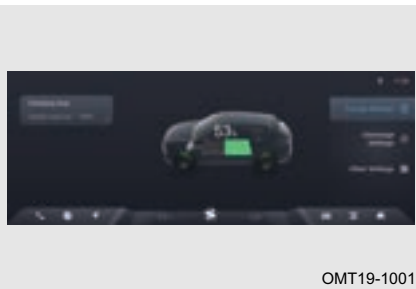
3. Remove the DC charging cable from charging pile, unplug the protective cap of DC charging port, and insert the charging cable to the DC charging port until a light sound is heard;
4. After charging is completed, unplug charging cable from DC charging port;
5. Close protection covers of DC charging port and charging cable and then close charging port cap;
6. Finally, place the charging cable back on the DC charging pile.

### CAUTION

- When the ambient temperature is too high/low, the charging time of the vehicle will be appropriately extended, which is a normal phenomenon. The vehicle charging system adaptively adjusts the charging power and charging time with temperature changes to ensure the optimal charging performance of the power battery.
- During charging with fast charging, it is recommended to unplug the charging cable when charging reaches 90%, and do not charge to full charge, which is helpful for protecting the power battery and extending the service life of the power battery.

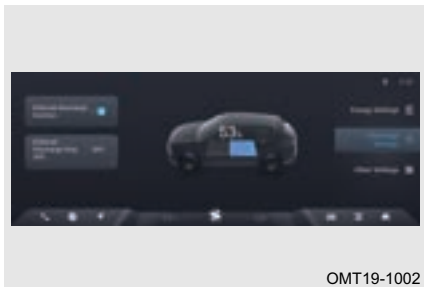
### New Energy

#### Energy settings



Set the charge stop SOC value.

## Discharge settings



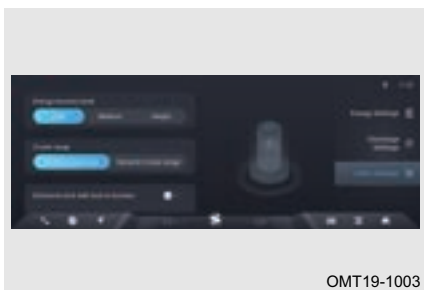
OMT19-1002

External discharge function ON/OFF, set external discharge stop SOC value.

### READ

Make sure that the total power of electrical equipment does not exceed 3.3 kW.

## Other settings



OMT19-1003

Energy recovery level: Set as low/medium/height.

Cruise range: Set WLTC cruise range/dynamic cruise range.

Electronic lock with lock-in function: Set as ON/OFF.

Two modes: Set as ON/OFF.

Battery heat preservation and cool function: Set as ON/OFF.

### READ

- Before using this function, make sure that the low voltage power supply is normal, the vehicle is stationary, the vehicle is shifted to P, and the brake pedal is depressed.
- Please turn on this function when the ambient temperature is higher than 40°C or lower than -15°C; Function on: Insert the cable for heat preservation, please pay attention to the electricity consumption, non-insert the cable for heat preservation, please pay attention to the change of the power battery SOC.

### WARNING

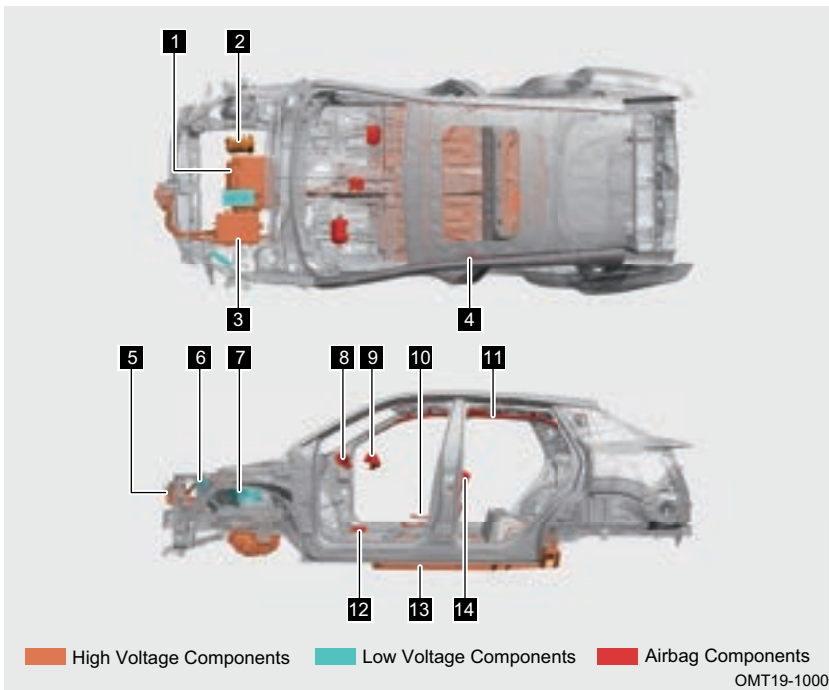
The towing speed should not exceed 5mph (8 km/h) and the towing distance must be short.

## 2. BATTERY ELECTRIC SYSTEM

### Intelligent Recharge

The vehicle has intelligent recharging function. When the function is triggered, 12 V battery will be charged by power battery. If the vehicle is placed in a high-temperature environment, it is also possible to trigger the power battery cooling request during intelligent recharging process, which will activate the A/C to cool the power battery to avoid damage to the power battery. Therefore, when the vehicle is started again after being placed for a period of time, SOC or pure electric driving mileage displayed on instrument cluster will decrease, which is a normal phenomenon. If you have any questions, please contact authorized service centre.

### Rescue Information Card



- |                         |   |   |
|-------------------------|---|---|
| <b>1</b> Motor Assembly | <b>2</b> Electric Compressor Assembly                 | <b>3</b> On-board Charging CDU Assembly |
| <b>4</b> Left Curtain   | <b>5</b> Internal Wire Harness Charging Port Assembly | <b>6</b> Vehicle Controller Assembly    |
| <b>7</b> Battery        | <b>8</b> Front Passenger Airbag Assembly              | <b>9</b> Driver Airbag Assembly         |

**10** Front Right Seat  
Side Airbag

**11** Right Curtain

**12** Airbag Module

**13** Power Battery Pack

**14** Front Left Seat Side  
Airbag

 **WARNING**

Orange wire harness in vehicle is high voltage wire harness. Never touch, remove or replace high voltage wire harness or high voltage parts connected with high voltage wire harness, otherwise, resulting in electric shock.

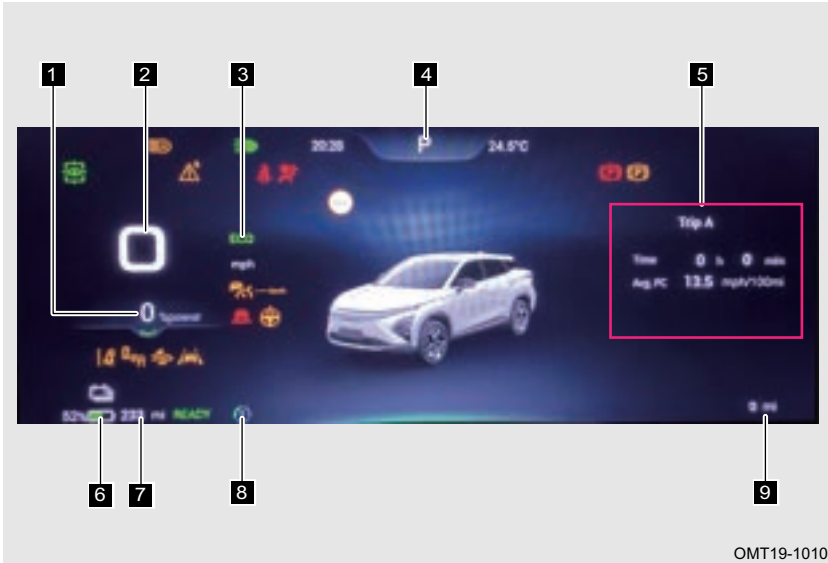


|   |   |                             |
|---|---|-----------------------------|
| 3-1. Instrument Cluster                   | Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC).....                 | 64                          |
| Instrument Cluster Overview .....         | Fogging Instructions for Light.....                     | 64                          |
| Adjusting Instrument Cluster.....         |   | 45                          |
| Operation/Malfunction Indicator .....     |   | 46                          |
| 3-2. Steering Wheel                       | 3-6. Seat   |                             |
| Horn.....                                 | Correct Sitting Posture .....                           | 65                          |
| Steering Wheel Heating (If equipped)..... | Head Restraint.....                                     | 66                          |
| Adjusting Steering Wheel ....             | Front Seat.....   | 67                          |
|   | Second Row Seat .....                                   | 68                          |
| 3-3. Rear View Mirror                     | Seat Heating Function (If equipped) .....               | 68                          |
| Inside Rear View Mirror .....             | Seat Ventilation Function (If equipped).....            | 69                          |
| Outside Rear View Mirror ....             |   | 3-7. Seat Belt              |
|   | Seat Belt.....  | 70                          |
| 3-4. Wiper System                         | Seat Belt Pretensioner .....                            | 75                          |
| Wiper System Operation .....              |   | 3-8. Child Restraint System |
| Replacing Wiper Blade.....                | Child Restraint Systems .....                           | 76                          |
|   | Recommended Child Restraint Systems .....               | 78                          |
| 3-5. Lighting System                      | Top Tether.....   | 78                          |
| Exterior Lighting.....                    | Installing Child Restraint Systems .....                | 80                          |
| Interior Lighting.....                    | Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag .....     | 84                          |
| Headlight Leveling Adjusting.....         | Child Presence Detection in Rear Seat (If Equipped) ... | 85                          |
| Follow Me Home Function .....             |   |                             |
| Smart Vehicle Locating Function .....     |   |                             |

## 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

### 3-1. Instrument Cluster

#### Instrument Cluster Overview



- 1** Percentage of instant power: Percentage of instant power to maximum power at current output power or energy recovery.
- 2** Speedometer: Driving speed (unit: mph (km/h)).
- 3** Driving mode: Indicates the current driving mode of vehicle.
- 4** Gear position information: Indicates the current gear position information of vehicle.
- 5** Driving information: Shortly press "⏏" button on steering wheel to circularly switch among instantaneous fuel consumption - after Trip A self-starting - after Trip B self-clearing - tyre pressure display - navigation.  
After Trip B self-clearing: Long press "O" button on steering wheel to reset the average speed and trip mileage informations.  
Navigation: Long press "O" button on steering wheel to enter full-screen map.
- 6** Power meter: Indicates remaining charge of vehicle power battery.
  - When the vehicle is accelerating, braking urgently, turning sharply or driving on a slope, the power meter reading is slightly inaccurate.
  - To get an accurate power meter reading, stop the vehicle on level ground and power it on, observe the power meter indication to judge the current remaining power.
- 7** Driving mileage: Indicates driving mileage of the vehicle.
- 8** Energy recovery level.

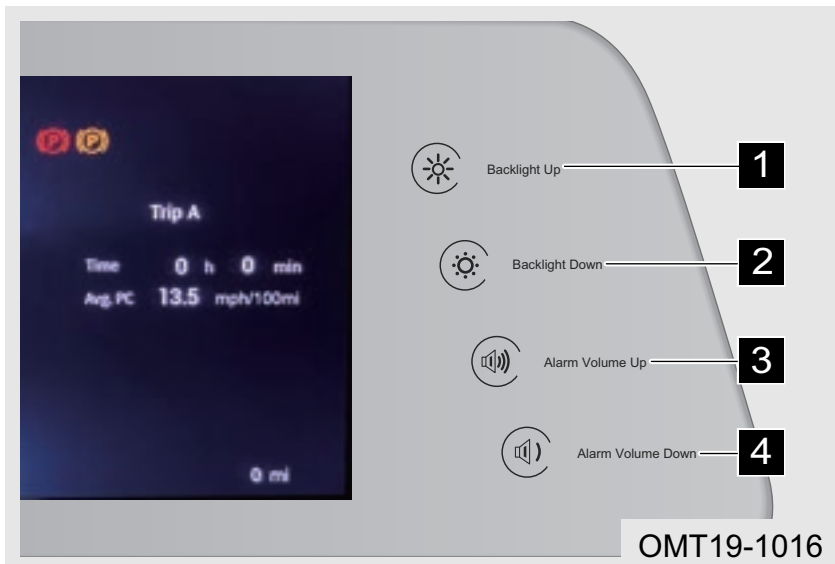


**9** Total mileage: The total mileage (common unit: mile (km)).

#### READ

- Driving mileage is calculated by the on-board computer and can be only for reference.
- The information is for reference only. Always upshift or downshift according to actual situations.
- Speedometer is affected by tyre size used in vehicle. Only tyres of original size can be used, otherwise it will not indicate the correct speed.

#### Adjusting Instrument Cluster



- 1** Increase the backlight brightness of instrument cluster
- 2** Decrease the backlight brightness of instrument cluster
- 3** Increase the alarm sound of instrument cluster
- 4** Decrease the alarm sound of instrument cluster









### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

#### Operation/Malfunction Indicator











When vehicle power is turned to ON mode, some malfunction indicators will come on for a short time, indicating that system is performing self-check. If one system malfunction indicator remains on or flashes after starting the vehicle, please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

The operation indicator is used to alert driver the operating condition of a certain vehicle's system and the corresponding operation indicator will remain on.










Malfunction indicator is used to alert driver that a certain system of the vehicle is malfunctioning and the corresponding malfunction indicator will remain on or flash.

|   |                              |  |
|---|------------------------------|--|
|    | Daytime running light        | When the vehicle starts, the indicator comes on.   |
|    | Turn signal indicator        | When the left or right turn signal lights are turned on, the corresponding turn signal indicator flashes. When hazard light switch is turned on, both left and right turn signal indicators will flash simultaneously.<br>If turn signal indicator flashes twice faster than usual, it means that turn signal indicator is malfunctioning. |
|    | Position light indicator     | When the position lights are turned on, the indicator comes on.  |
|  | High beam light indicator    | When the high beam light is turned on or the high beam lights flash, the indicator comes on.   |
|  | Headlight low beam indicator | When low beam lights are turned on, this indicator comes on.   |
|  | Front fog light              | When Front fog light is turned on, the rear fog light indicator will come on.  |
|  | Rear fog light indicator     | When rear fog lights are turned on, the rear fog light indicator comes on.   |
|  | Auto hold indicator          | When auto hold operates, rear fog light indicator comes on.  |







### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
|    | Intelligent high beam operation indicator     | When intelligent high beam function is turned on, this indicator comes on.  |
|    | Intelligent high beam malfunction indicator   | When intelligent high beam function is malfunctioning, this indicator comes on.   |
|    | Malfunction indicator                         | This indicator is used to alert the driver that vehicle is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.   |
|    | Drive anti-skid indicator                     | When drive anti-skid function is operating, indicator flashes, when drive anti-skid is malfunctioning, indicator remains on, please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible. |
|    | Drive anti-skid shielding indicator           | When drive anti-skid function is turned off, the indicator remains on.  |
|    | Vehicle power limitation indicator            | This indicator is used to alert driver that system power is limited.  |
|   | EPB malfunction indicator                     | This indicator is used to display that the current electronic parking is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized dealer for inspection and repair as soon as possible.   |
|  | Front collision warning malfunction indicator | This indicator is used to indicate that the automatic emergency braking system is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized dealer for inspection and repair as soon as possible.                                    |
|  | Vehicle maintenance reminder indicator        | This indicator remains on to alert the driver that the vehicle needs maintenance. Please contact your authorized service centre for care and maintenance as soon as possible.   |
|  | Power battery cut off indicator               | The indicator remains on to alert driver that the connection between power battery and drive motor is cut off.  |









### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
|    | <p>Blind spot detection malfunction indicator</p>        | <p>This indicator is used to indicate that the blind spot detection system is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized service centre for care and maintenance as soon as possible.</p>                                    |
|    | <p>Driver seat belt unfastened warning light</p>         | <p>When the vehicle is powered on and the driver unfastens seat belt, warning light comes on.</p>  |
|    | <p>Second row seat belt indicator (If equipped)</p>      | <p>This indicator remains on to alert the driver that the second row seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.</p>   |
|    | <p>Charging cable connection indicator</p>               | <p>When charging vehicle, charging cable connection indicator is on.</p>   |
|    | <p>Door open indicator</p>                               | <p>This indicator is used to alert the driver of the opening and closing status of driver door.</p>  |
|    | <p>Electrical parking indicator</p>                      | <p>This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle is in electric parking condition currently.</p>   |
|    | <p>Hill descent indicator</p>                            | <p>This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's hill descent is operating currently.</p>  |
|  | <p>Hill descent malfunction indicator</p>                | <p>The indicator is used to alert driver that there is a fault in the current vehicle hill descent. Please contact your authorized service centre for care and maintenance as soon as possible.</p>                              |
|  | <p>Electric drive system overheating alarm indicator</p> | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver that motor or controller temperature is too high, cooling system occurs malfunction. Please contact your authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p> |

### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
|    |   | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver that system insulation is malfunctioning; The indicator remains on in case of general leakage, and flashes in case of serious leakage. If the indicator is on, please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>   |
|    | <p>Insulation malfunction indicator</p>           |   |
|    | <p>Brake light malfunction indicator</p>          | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver that brake light is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>  |
|    | <p>Airbag malfunction indicator</p>               | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver that airbag system is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p> <p>If the indicator light on the instrument disappears after a short reminder, it may be that the vehicle collects the occupants in a non-safe sitting posture in real time (including but not limited to: the adult position of young children, the trigger of objects placed on the seat and the occupant's non-safe sitting posture, etc.), the vehicle will be reminded by the airbag indicator to adjust the sitting posture and the vehicle will return to normal soon.</p> <p>The fault record of the airbag system can be read through the diagnostic instrument. There may be a record in the historical fault, and the historical fault code can be cleared.</p> |
|  | <p>Power battery malfunction indicator</p>        | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver that power battery is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>  |
|  | <p>Tyre system pressure malfunction indicator</p> | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver that tyre pressure system is malfunctioning. Please check if tyre pressure is too low/high. If tyre pressure is abnormal, please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>  |

### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

|   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
|    | <p>Vehicle system malfunction indicator</p>                 | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver that vehicle system is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>  |
|    | <p>Brake system malfunction indicator</p>                   | <p>This indicator is used to alert the driver that brake fluid level is too low or brake system is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>  |
|    | <p>Anti-lock brake system malfunction indicator</p>         | <p>This indicator comes on to alert driver that anti-lock brake system is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>   |
|    | <p>Electric power steering system malfunction indicator</p> | <p>This indicator comes on to alert driver that electric power steering system is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>   |
|    | <p>Battery charging/discharging malfunction indicator</p>   | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver that battery charging/discharging is malfunctioning. Please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>  |
|   | <p>Low power battery indicator</p>                          | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver that the power battery is low. Please charge in time.</p>  |
|  | <p>Speed limit reminder indicator</p>                       | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver to keep the speed on the current road section and avoid speeding.</p>  |
|  | <p>Lane keeping system operation indicator</p>              | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver that lane keeping system is in operating condition.</p>  |
| <p>READY</p>  | <p>Driving ready indicator</p>                              | <p>This indicator is used to alert driver that vehicle is ready for normal driving. If the indicator does not come on, it indicates that vehicle is malfunctioning or other conditions are not met, please contact your authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p> |

### READ

Operation/Malfunction Indicator are different according to the vehicle configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

### 3-2. Steering Wheel

#### Horn

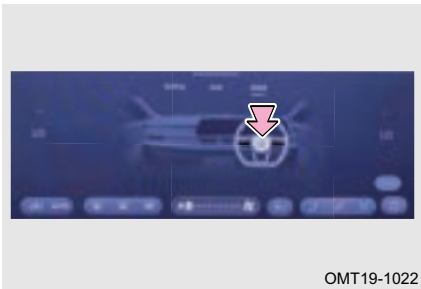




To sound the horn, press area near horn mark on the steering wheel.

### READ

Obey local regulations regarding usage of vehicle horns.

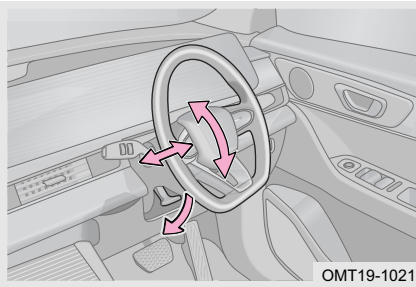
#### Steering Wheel Heating (If equipped)



After vehicle is started, press "  " button on steering wheel, steering wheel heating function is turned on; press "  " button again or the function operates for 25 minutes, steering wheel heating function is turned off.

## 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

### Adjusting Steering Wheel



Stop vehicle at a safe place away from major traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode:

Step 1: Push down adjustment lever and release it;

Step 2: Adjust steering wheel upward and downward/forward and backward to a comfortable angle;

Step 3: Hold steering wheel steady and push adjustment lever to original position;

Step 4: Check if the steering wheel is shaking. Repeat operations of step 3 if shaking.

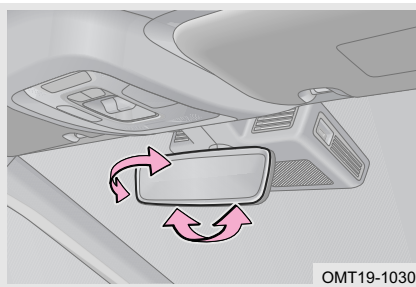
#### WARNING

- Do not adjust steering wheel while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Make sure the steering wheel is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

### 3-3. Rear View Mirror

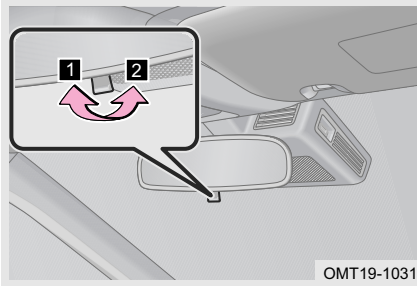
#### Inside Rear View Mirror

#### Adjusting inside rear view mirror



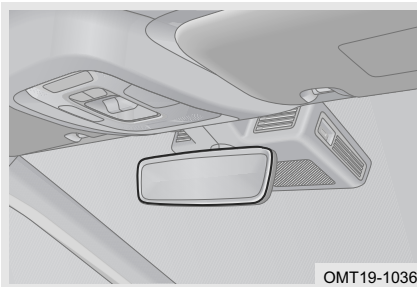
Adjust inside rear view mirror to a proper position before driving, to make sure that driver can achieve an optimum view.



**Manual glare-resistant (If equipped)**

Before driving at night, adjust the inside rear view mirror lever to the anti-glare position, which can reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

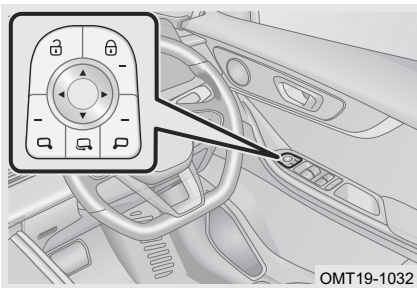
- 1 Anti-glare position
- 2 Normal position

**Automatic glare-resistant (If equipped)**

To reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind during night driving, brightness of the lens will be automatically detected and adjusted.

**Outside Rear View Mirror****Adjusting outside rear view mirror**

## ■ Switch adjustment



Stop vehicle at a safe place away from major traffic, turn vehicle power to ON mode. Press "⏏" button (- indicator comes on) to adjust the left outside rear view mirror lens position within 40 seconds. Press "⏏" button again (indicator goes off) to turn off the left outside rear view mirror lens adjustment function; Press "⏏" button (indicator comes on) to adjust the right outside rear view mirror lens position within 40 seconds. Press "⏏" button again (indicator goes off) to turn off the right outside rear view mirror lens adjustment function.

### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

▲ Adjust outside rear view mirror lens upward

▼ Adjust outside rear view mirror lens downward

◀ Adjust outside rear view mirror lens to the left

▶ Adjust outside rear view mirror lens to the right

#### ■ Audio adjustment



OMT19-1035

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, press button on steering wheel to adjust left/right outside rear view mirror lens positions through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Comfort - Rear View Mirror Adjustment.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust outside rear view mirror while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Image displayed on outside rear view mirror may differ from the actual, so always drive carefully.

#### Folding/Extending power outside rear view mirror

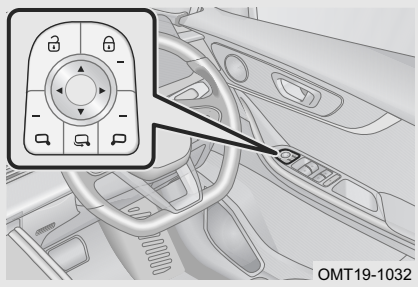
#### ■ Audio adjustment



OMT19-1035

Turn vehicle power to ON mode. Turn on outside rear view mirror automatic folding through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Body. In disarming/arming, outside rear view mirror will fold/extend automatically.

### ■ Switch adjustment



When vehicle power is turned to ON mode, press " " button to automatically fold outside rear view mirror, press " " button again to extend outside rear view mirror automatically.

#### READ

According to visual field requirements, folding angles of the left and right outside rear view mirrors are different. Therefore, when power outside rear view mirrors automatically fold, the left and right outside rear view mirrors are not synchronized, which is normal.

#### CAUTION

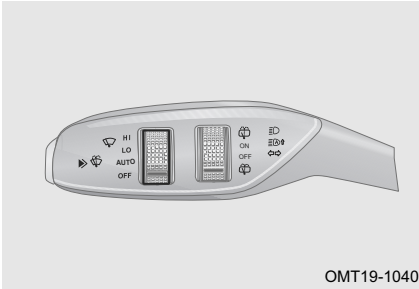
- Do not fold/extend the power outside rear view mirror manually, otherwise it may cause the folding function to fail.
- When folding/extending the outside rear view mirror, do not touch its surface to prevent damage to it with excessive force.
- In cold winter, it is recommended to turn off the outside rear view mirror automatic folding function. This will prevent the outside rear view mirror from being frozen in folding position due to accumulated snow or rain.

## 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

### 3-4. Wiper System

#### Wiper System Operation

##### Wiper switch



Turn vehicle power to ON mode:

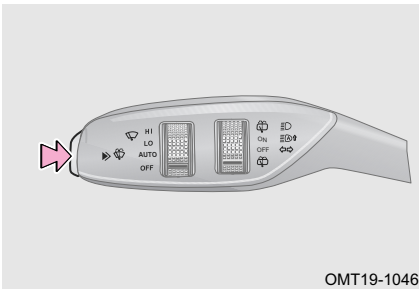
High speed mode: Push roller to "HI" position to operate quickly and continuously.

Low speed mode: Push roller to "LO" position to operate slowly and continuously.

OFF: Push roller to "OFF" position, wipers will operate automatically at low speed until wipers return to stop position.

Auto sensing mode: Push roller to "-AUTO" position, automatically control the wiping speed of the wiper according to amount of rainfall outside.

Spray mode: Shortly press the left button of wiper switch, the wiper will stop after wiping once; Long press the left button of wiper switch, the front washer sprays water, and front wiper operates simultaneously. Front washer will stop operating when the switch is released, the wiper will wipe 3 cycles at low speed, and operate one cycle then stop after a few seconds.



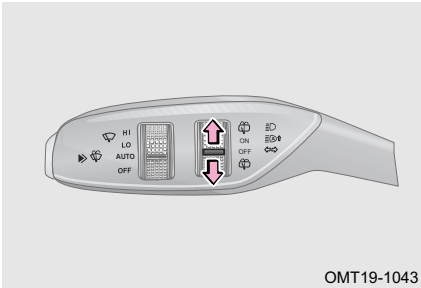
#### READ

When front wiper is operating, shift the shift lever to R, the rear wiper will work automatically.

### ⚠ CAUTION


- Take care to prevent the wrong addition of antifreeze whilst adding washer fluid.
- When operating wiper switch to spray water, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not operate wiper switch to spray water when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.
- Do not operate wiper switch when the windshield is dry, as this may damage wiper blade and scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wiper switch if there are obstacles on windshield, as this may scratch the windshield and damage wiper motor.
- In cold winter, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before operating wiper switch. If so, defrost it before using, otherwise it may damage wiper blade and wiper motor.

### Rear Wiper Operation



Turn vehicle power to ON mode:

Push roller to "ON" position, rear wiper operates; Push roller to "OFF" position, rear wiper is turned off.

Push roller to "  " position from "ON"/"OFF" position and hold, rear washer sprays and rear wiper operates simultaneously.

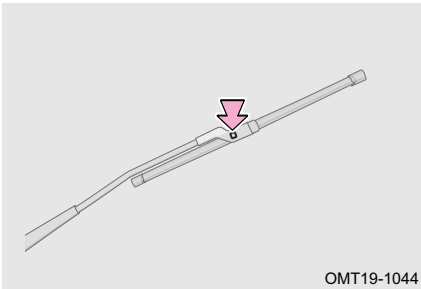
### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

#### CAUTION

- Take care to prevent the wrong addition of antifreeze during adding washer fluid.
- When operating wiper switch to spray water, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not operate wiper switch to spray water when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.
- Do not operate wiper switch when the windshield is dry, as this may damage wiper blade and scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wiper switch if there are obstacles on windshield, as this may scratch the windshield and damage wiper motor.
- Do not mix water with the washer fluid. Otherwise, it may cause the washer fluid to freeze and damage the washing tank and other parts of the washer system.
- In cold winter, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before operating wiper switch. If so, defrost it before using, otherwise it may damage wiper blade and wiper motor.

#### Replacing Wiper Blade

##### Replacing front wiper blade



Step 1: Move wiper combination switch to mist mode within 3 seconds after turning vehicle power to OFF mode, it will enter repair mode;

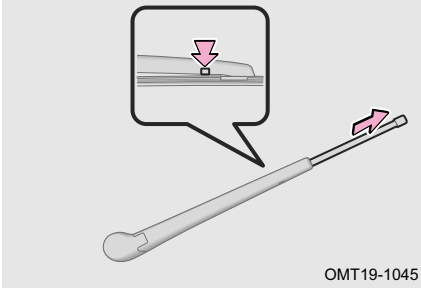
Step 2: Lift the front wiper arm and hold;

Step 3: Push up wiper blades while pressing the lock button, so as to remove the blades;

Step 4: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and make sure that the fixing clamp is locked firmly;

Step 5: Check that front wipers operate properly.

### Replacing rear wiper blade



Step 1: Lift the rear wiper arm and hold;

Step 2: Push up wiper blades while pressing the lock buttons on both sides, so as to remove the blades;

Step 3: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and be sure to install them in place;

Step 4: Check that rear wipers operate properly.

#### READ

It is recommended that you have wiper blades replaced by someone at authorized service centre to ensure correct fitting.

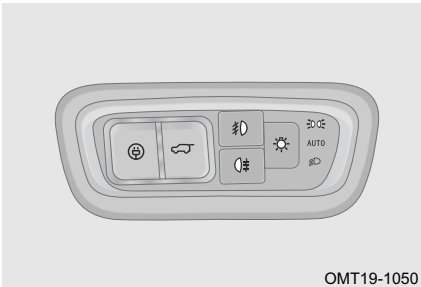
#### CAUTION

Make sure that the wiper arm returns to its original position before driving. otherwise it may damage the vehicle and cause an accident.

## 3-5. Lighting System

### Exterior Lighting

#### Headlight combination switch



Turn vehicle power to ON mode:


**Auto sensing mode:** When headlight is turned off, the headlight will come on and the auto sensing mode is turned on by pressing "☀" switch to "AUTO" position. Sense the intensity of external light, turn position lights, low beam lights, license plate light on/off automatically.


**OFF:** When headlight is turned on, the headlight function is turned off and the switch returns to "AUTO" position automatically by pressing "☀" switch.

**Position lights:** Switch "☀" switch to "☁" position to turn on position lights, license plate lights, ambient light and backlights.

**Low beam lights:** Switch "☀" switch to "☾" position to turn on low beam lights and keep position lights remaining on.

### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Front fog lights: When low beam light is turned on, press "  " button to turn on front fog lights.

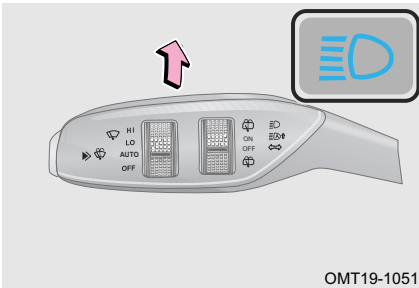
Rear fog lights: When low beam light is turned on, press "  " button to turn on rear fog lights.

#### READ

- When turning off low beam lights, the rear fog lights turn off at the same time.
- When parking vehicle for a long time or before leaving vehicle, make sure that wiper switch' always turned off to prevent the battery from being depleted. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to not start.

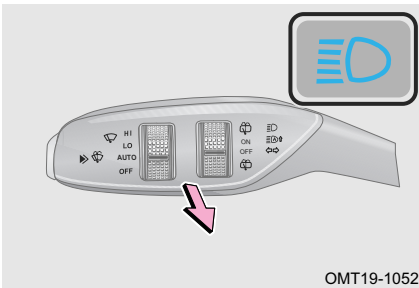
### High beam light

#### ■ High beam lights ON/OFF



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, when turning on low beam lights, pull wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, high beam lights come on; Pull towards steering wheel side and release to turn off high beam lights.

#### ■ High beam lights flash



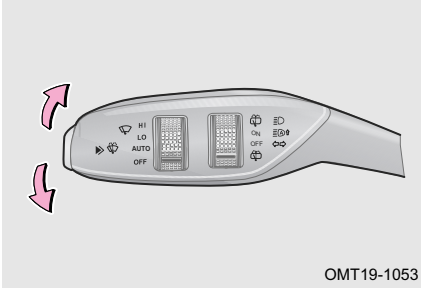
Turn vehicle power to ON mode, pull wiper switch towards the steering wheel and release it to flash the high beam lights once. At the same time, high beam lights indicator in instrument cluster flashes once.

#### READ

High beam lights can flash when the low beam lights are off.



### Turn signal light



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, Push the wiper switch upwards, right turn signal light is turned on; push the wiper switch downwards, left turn signal light is turned on.

When turn signal lights are turned on, the indicator will flash in the instrument cluster. As vehicle is turning back after turning, combination switch automatically returns to center position.

**Note:** During small angle steering, the wiper switch may not automatically return to original position.

#### ■ Lane change assist function

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, pull turn signal light switch once but not too far over. This will make the indicator flash 3 times.

### Daytime running light

After vehicle starts, the daytime running lights come on.

### Brake light

Depress the brake pedal, brake light and high mounted stop light turn on.

### Reverse light

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, shift the shift lever to R, reverse light turns on.

### Automatic sensing welcome light

Approach the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person while vehicle is locked, the automatic sensing welcome light will turn on automatically.

## Interior Lighting

### Front dome light

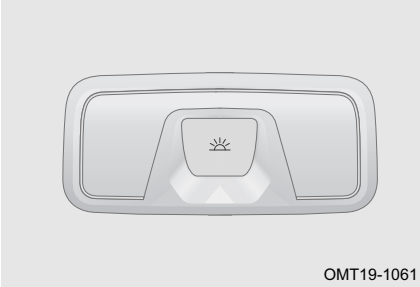


Press "☀" switch, the illumination light comes on; Press the "☀" switch again to turn off light.

Press "☑" switch, if any door opens and remains open, illumination light and second row dome light will come on; press "☑" switch again or close the door, illumination light and second row dome light will turn off.

## 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

### Second row dome light (If equipped)



Press "☀" switch, the second row dome light comes on; Press the "☀" switch again to turn off light.

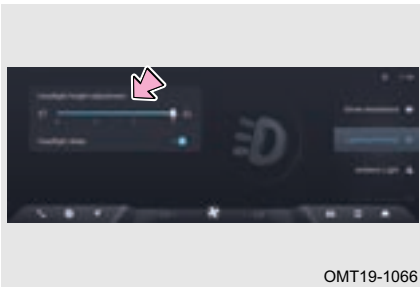
### Armrest box light

When armrest box lid is opened, the armrest box light will come on automatically. When armrest box lid is closed, the armrest box light will go off immediately.

### Luggage compartment light

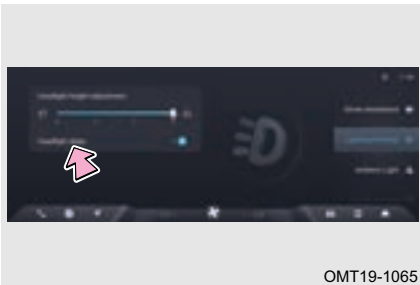
When boot door is opened, luggage compartment light will come on automatically. When boot door is closed, luggage compartment light will go off immediately.

### Headlight Leveling Adjusting

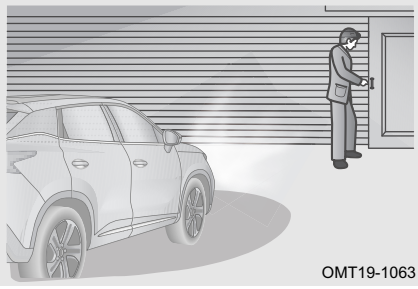


Turn vehicle power to ON mode, slide to adjust headlight leveling through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Lighting Settings.

### Follow Me Home Function



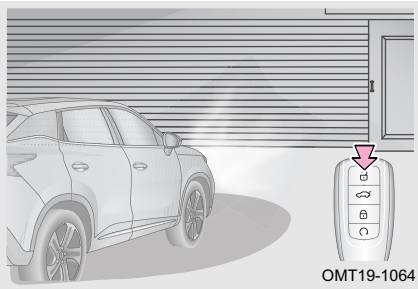
Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on headlight delay through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Lighting Settings.



**ON:** Turn the headlight switch to "-AUTO" position. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press lock button on smart key, and the vehicle is armed successfully. Low beam lights automatically come on for 10 seconds. Press lock button on smart key to activate it again.

**OFF:** When the headlight switch is not in "AUTO" position or reaches the set operating time, the follow me home function will turn off automatically. Low beam lights and position lights will go off immediately.

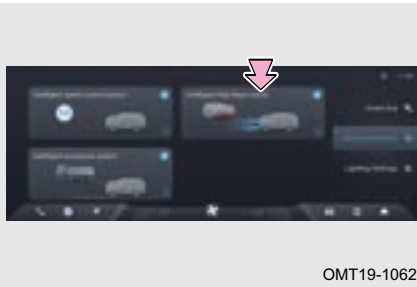
#### Smart Vehicle Locating Function



Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, turn the headlight switch to "AUTO" position before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press unlock button on smart key, and the low beam lights will come on for 10 seconds.

### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

#### Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC)



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on Intelligent High Beam Assist through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Lighting Settings.

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn "Headlight" to "AUTO" position. When the low beam light is automatically turned on, push the wiper switch' away from steering wheel side and release, "A" white indicator on instrument cluster comes on, and the Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) is activated; When the Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) is activated and vehicle speed is higher than 24 mph (40 km/ h), the Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) automatically turns headlight high beam on/off according to road conditions, such as meeting, following, and overtaking.

When the Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) is activated, the headlight high beam turns on or flashes, the white indicator "A" in instrument cluster goes out. Push the wiper switch' away from the steering wheel side and release, Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) is reactivated.

#### READ

- When the ambient brightness is too high, the Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the vehicle speed is lower than 18 mph (30 km/h), the Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the left/right indicator signal light is activated, the Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) can not turn the headlight high beam on/off automatically.

#### Fogging Instructions for Light

When the weather is cold or humid, the inner side of lights will fog up due to the difference in temperature between the inside and outside. After lights turn on for a period of time, the fog inside the lens will gradually disappear, and there may still be some fog at the edge of the lens. This is normal. This fog has no effect on service life of lighting system. The vehicle lights generate fog, which gradually begins to disappear in the inner surface of lens for headlight

within 30 minutes after the low and high beam lights are turned on. After a period of lighting, the fog disappears naturally. This is normal.

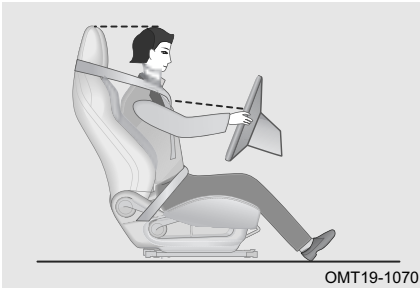
### WARNING

- Following guidelines for driving through water (for example: water depth, speed, etc.) to avoid any water entering the lights.
- After opening light dust cover, reinstall it in place at the end of operation, otherwise water may enter the lights.
- When replacing a bulb, strictly check installation of various light components to make sure that they are installed correctly and sealed properly. When installing rear cover, check its seal ring and keep it clean! Otherwise, it will lead to water and dust entering lights!
- It is strictly forbidden to flush the front Compartment with a high pressure water cable, in particular, the lights cannot be flushed. Due to high pressure of high pressure water cable, accessories on lights may lose or fall off, vent hole and wire harness connector may damp, resulting in water infiltration or moisture not dispersing for a long time, and even severe condensation.

### 3-6. Seat

#### Correct Sitting Posture

The seats, head restraints, seat belts and airbags are helpful to protect passengers. Using them correctly will provide you with more protection.



When sitting, sit slightly inclined backwards (25° backward is ideal) and well back on seatback.

The front seats must not be too close to the instrument panel. The driver should hold the steering wheel with slightly bent arms during driving. His/her feet should also be bent slightly so that he/she can fully depress the pedal.

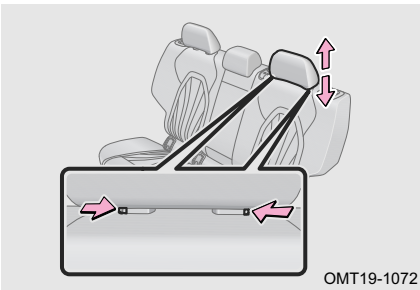
### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING



The shoulder belt should be over the center of the shoulder and close to the chest, kept away from the neck, the lap belt should lie over the hips but not stomach.

#### Head Restraint

#### Second row seat head restraint adjustment



Adjust head restraint upward: Pull it up directly to a proper height.

Adjust head restraint downward: Press the unlock button on the outside of head restraint to unlock, then adjust the head restraint downward.

Remove head restraints: Press and hold 2 unlock buttons at the same time until unlocked, then lift the head restraint straight up and pull it out completely.

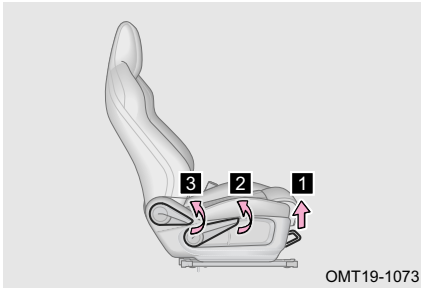
Install head restraints: Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to lock position.

#### WARNING

- Do not adjust head restraint while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Make sure that the head restraint is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

## Front Seat

## Manual seat (If equipped)



OMT19-1073

**1** Adjusting seat forward and backward

Pull grip up and move the seat back and forth to adjust the seat position forward and backward. After adjusting seat to a desired position, release the grip. Then, shake the seat forward and backward to make sure that the seat is locked properly.

**2** Adjusting seat height (only driver side)

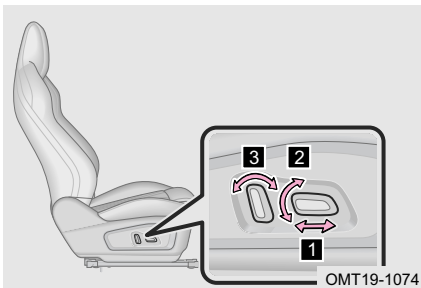
Pull up and push down seat adjustment lever to adjust seat height.

**3** Adjusting seatback angle

Lean your body against seatback, and then pull seatback adjustment lever upward. Adjust seatback to desired angle by changing tilt angle of your body and release the lever. After that, apply force backward against the seatback to make sure that the seatback is locked properly.

## Power seat

■ Adjusting driver power seat (If equipped)



OMT19-1074

**1** Adjusting seat forward and backward

Push button forward and backward to adjust seat forward and backward.

**2** Adjusting seat height (only driver side)

Move rear end of button up and down to adjust seat height.

**3** Adjusting seatback angle

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not place any items under the seat while moving the seat, otherwise, it will damage the seat.

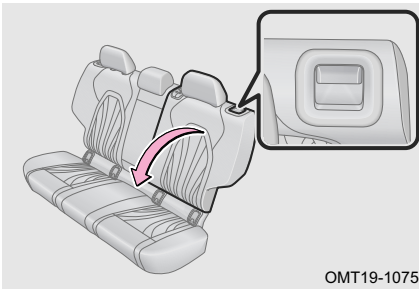
### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

#### WARNING

- Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Avoid reclining seatback any more than needed, the seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger sit inclined slightly backwards and well back in their seats.

#### Second Row Seat

##### Folding seatback (take left side as an example)



Step 1: Adjust the front seat position forward;

Step 2: Adjust height of second row seat head restraints (remove them if necessary) and fold up center armrest;

Step 3: Press the locking buckle and pull seatback forward to fold it down slowly. This can enlarge the luggage storage space.

#### READ

When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.


#### WARNING

Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

#### Seat Heating Function (If equipped)

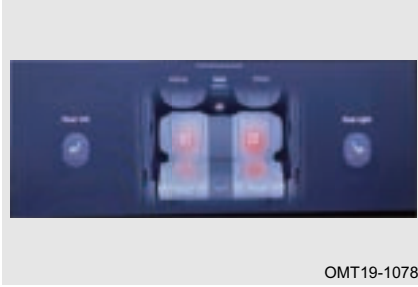
##### Front seat heating (If equipped)



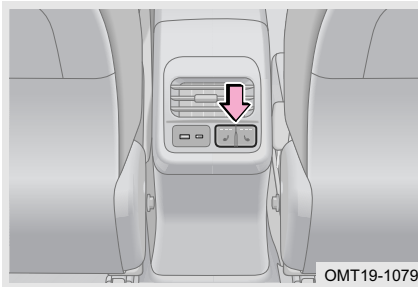
After vehicle starts, click the "" button on the front seat setting screen to turn on the seat heating function and switch among level 3/ level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.



#### Second row seat heating (If equipped)



After vehicle starts, click the "🪑" button on the second row seat setting screen to turn on the seat heating function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.



After vehicle starts, click the "🪑" button turn on the seat heating function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.

#### READ

- Front seat heating and front seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.
- Audio main screen displays air conditioning system operation screen by sliding up audio main screen from bottom.
- Front seat heating and the second row seat heating are not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

#### Seat Ventilation Function (If equipped)

##### Front seat ventilation (If equipped)



After vehicle starts, click the "🪑" button on the front seat setting screen to turn on the seat ventilation function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.

## 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

### READ

- Front seat heating and front seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.
- Slide up the screen from the top of audio main screen or operate the air conditioning panel button to display the air conditioning system operation screen.

### 3-7. Seat Belt

#### Seat Belt



We strongly recommend the driver and passengers wear their seat belts correctly at all times. Failure to do so could increase possibility and severity of injury in an accident. Check the seat belt regularly. If any seat belt function failure is found, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

#### Seat belt indicator

Front seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is less than 13 mph (22 km/h), red indicator "🚗" in instrument cluster flashes; When vehicle speed is no less than 13 mph (22 km/h), the red indicator "🚗" in instrument cluster flashes, accompanied by sound alarm.

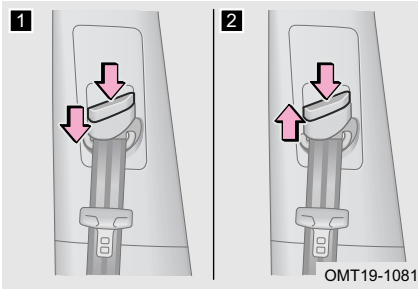
Second row seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is no less than 13 mph (22 km/h), red indicator "🚗🚗" in instrument cluster remains on for 30 seconds and then goes off, accompanied by sound alarm.

### READ

The front passenger seat belt alarm function is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

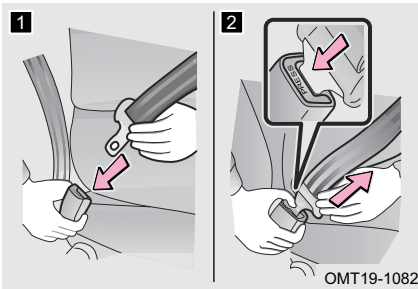
#### Using seat belt correctly

Step 1: Adjust the height of front seat belts;



- 1** Adjust downward: Push seat belt height adjuster downward while pressing adjusting button.
- 2** Adjust upward: Push seat belt height adjuster upward while pressing adjusting button.

Step 2: Fasten/release seat belt;



- 1** Fasten seat belt: Push the tab into the buckle until a "click" sound is heard.
- 2** Release seat belt: Press the release button to retract seat belt. If the belt cannot retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Make sure that seat belt can retract smoothly.

#### READ

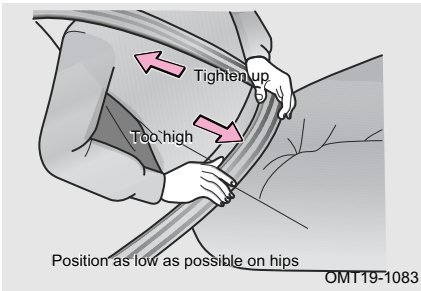
- The seat belt will lock when the vehicle is on a slope.
- The seat belt will lock when it is pulled out quickly, but will not lock when pulling it out slowly.
- Each seat belt shall be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at one time, including children.
- Only front seat belt can perform height adjustment. The usage method of the second row seat belts is same as the front seat belt. For the specific buckle position, please refer to your own vehicle.

#### CAUTION

- Make sure that seat belt buckle position is correct and is locked safely, otherwise it may cause personal injuries.
- Do not use any seat belt with a loose buckle, otherwise, the seat belt will not protect the passengers in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Step 3: Adjust the position of seat belts.

### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

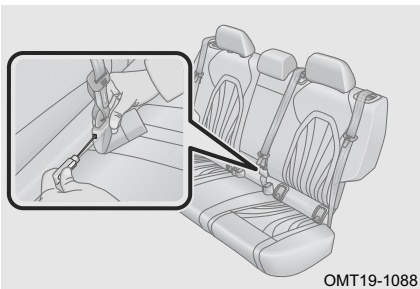


To adjust the seatback angle, sit up straightly and well back in the seat. Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips — not on your waist, then pull the shoulder belt upward so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.

#### CAUTION

- Avoid loose fitting clothes when driving. These can prevent the seatbelt fitting correctly and can affect the protection offered.
- Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries during a collision.
- Do not recline seat more than necessary to achieve a comfortable ride. Seat belts are most effective when the back of the passenger and the seat keep a complete fit.
- Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across your shoulder. Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the protection effect of seat belt in an accident.
- We recommend that children be seated in the second row seat. Select the child restraint system with ISOFIX function according to the child's height. Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on second row seat.

#### Second row center three-point type seat belt

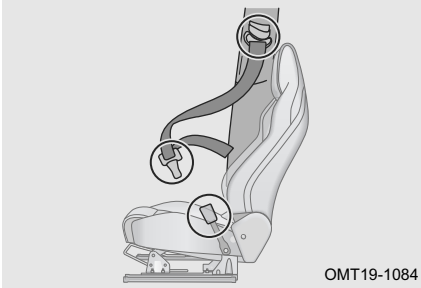


When the small latch is inserted into the small buckle on the left side of second row seat, the small latch can be pulled out by pressing down with a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped.

#### READ

When folding the seatback, you need to unfasten the second row center three-point seat belt, otherwise it may be impossible to be pulled out by locking.

## Maintaining seat belt



Check seat belts regularly for cuts, fraying, loose and stretched belt (- such as after a traffic accident). If the belt is damaged, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

### CAUTION

- Do not allow water to penetrate belt retractor or buckle mechanism.
- Do not use chemical detergent, boiling water, bleach or dye to wash the seat belt.
- The seat belt should be washed with mild cleanser or warm water and dry naturally. Never clean it with artificial heat.
- Do not try to repair or lubricate retractor or buckle mechanism of seat belt, or repair seat belt in any way, we will not be held for any problem caused in this way..

### WARNING

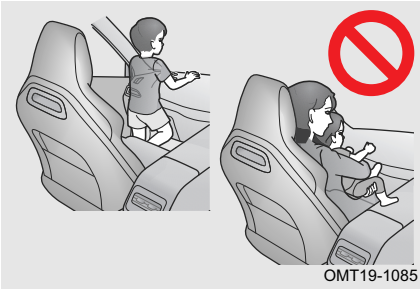
- If your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident and even if seat belt is not obviously damaged, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and replace.
- Ensure that the belt can function properly and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function properly, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any service done to the seat belts by authorized service centre.

## Seat belt precautions

### ■ Precautions for using seat belt by a child

The seat belts of your vehicle are designed for persons of adult size. Use a child restraint system (for details, refer to "Child Restraint System") appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt. When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. If a child is too large to use a child restraint system, the child should sit in the second row seat and must be restrained using the vehicle seat belt.

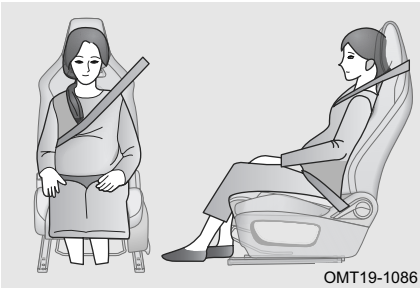
### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING



Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Otherwise, the child is at risk of serious injury or even death during a collision.

Failure to use a child restraint system (for example: let a child stand or kneel on seats; let a child sit on an adult's laps; holding a child in arms). This may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or unintended events.

#### ■ Precautions for using seat belt by a pregnant woman

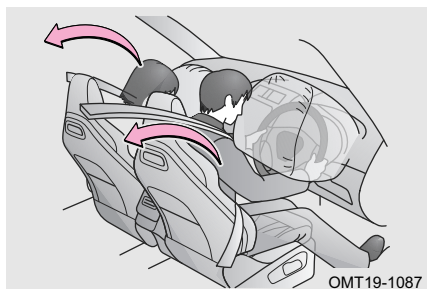


Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt properly. Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and across the chest, avoid belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area. If the seat belt is not worn properly, it may cause serious injuries or death during a collision.

#### WARNING

- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. into the buckle to prevent from properly latching tab and buckle.
- After inserting the tab, make sure that the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap belt and shoulder belt are not twisted.
- It is not allowed to insert the non-genuine seat belt tab into buckle. Long-term use will easily lead to damage of the seat belt buckle and make it unusable.
- If the seat belt does not function normally, it cannot protect passengers from death or serious injury, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

## Seat Belt Pretensioner



1. Seat belt pretensioner is designed to assist front airbag in the event of a severe impact.
2. In the event of a minor impact or side impact, pretensioner may not activate.
3. During a severe impact, seat belt pretensioner may be activated even if there is no occupant in front seat.

4. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, retractor quickly tightens seat belt to tightly restrain occupant.
5. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, it may make a working sound and release a small amount of non-toxic gas. The produced gas does not cause a fire and is generally harmless.

### WARNING

- When seat belt pretensioner is activated, the airbag malfunction indicator remains on, and seat belts cannot be retracted/pulled out. Please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not modify, remove, hit or open the seat belt pretensioner assembly, airbag sensor and assembly wire. Otherwise, it may cause death or serious injuries during a collision.

### Function limit

■ In the following cases, the seat belt pretensioner may not work properly:

1. Modify suspension system.
2. Modify front body section.
3. Repair the seat belt pretensioner or any assembly nearby.
4. Seat belt pretensioner assembly or its surrounding area is damaged.
5. Install grill guard or any other device to front body.

### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

#### 3-8. Child Restraint System

##### Child Restraint Systems

According to accident statistics, a child is safer sitting in the second row seat and properly restrained than child in front seat. Choose a child restraint system suitable for the vehicle, age and size of the child. (Vehicle seat belt meet international standards is designed according to body size of child over 1.5 m. If any under 1.5 m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident).

This instruction only provides installation instructions for child restraint systems (ISOFIX). For installation details, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

##### WARNING

- Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.
- Child restraint system should comply with the safety standards set by local regulations and laws. We will take no responsibility for an accident caused by using a child restraint system.
- For effective protection in accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or a appropriate child restraint system installed on the second row seat depending on age and size of the child. Holding a child in the arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system.

##### Child Safety Seat Grouping

Child restraint systems should comply with local motor vehicle standards for child restraint systems and child safety prevention system (ECE R44/R129), generally, the verified child restraint system is applied a local certification label and also has an orange label after testing by ECE R44/R129 standard. There is information, such as weight group, ISOFIX level and license for child restraint system, on this label.

CRS Table

| Seat position   | Seating position |                               |                          |                            |                           |
|---|------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
|   | Driver           | 1 <sup>st</sup> row passenger | 2 <sup>nd</sup> row left | 2 <sup>nd</sup> row middle | 2 <sup>nd</sup> row right |
| Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no) | NO               | YES                           | YES                      | YES                        | YES                       |
| i-Size seating position (yes/no)                        | NO               | NO                            | YES                      | NO                         | YES                       |

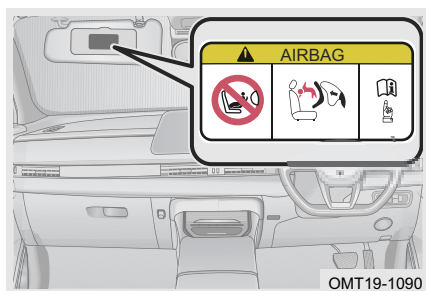


|   |   |   |            |   |            |
|---|---|---|------------|---|------------|
| Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/ L2)    | - | - | -          | - | -          |
| Largest suitable rearwardfacing fixture (R1/ R2X/ R2/ R3) | - | - | R1/R3      | - | R1/R3      |
| Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F1/F2X /F2/ F3)  | - | - | F2/F2X/ F3 | - | F2/F2X/ F3 |
| Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)                  | - | - | B2         | - | B2         |

### READ

- The child seat category is defined according to ECE R16/R44/R129, you can find the category of child seat on it' s specification. The child restraint system must be appropriate to the age, weight and size of the child.
- If it is absolutely necessary for you to install a child seat to the front passenger seat, be sure to turn passenger airbag off. Adjust front passenger seat to the highest and rearmost position before installing universal CRS on it.
- It is forbidden to install a child seat with a support base or with a support leg on the middle seat of the 2<sup>nd</sup> row.

### Child Restraint System Precautions



This sticker is attached to front passenger sun visor and used to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with front airbag (SRS). Observe the following precautions:

- When using a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must be OFF, Refer to "- Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag".
- Never change the design of child restraint system fixing device or seat belt on the vehicle under any circumstances.
- Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.

It is the driver's responsibility to comply to the instructions provided, and to the instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

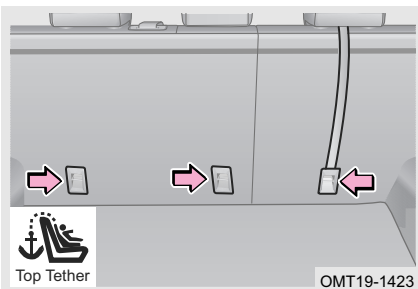
#### Recommended Child Restraint Systems

- Only use child restraints approved to either ECE R44 or ECE R129. Refer to the approval reference attached to the child restraint system.
- When using child restraint systems, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer and strictly follow the installation instructions, to ensure the child restraint system is installed correctly.
- We recommends the following child restraint systems.

| Child Height/<br>Mass Group | Name  | Manufacturer | Type Of Fixation                                  |
|-----------------------------|---|--------------|---|
| 40~83cm                     | Baby-Safe 2 i-<br>Size CRS with i-<br>Size Base | Britax Römer | ISOFIX with<br>Support Leg (-<br>Rearward Facing) |
| 76~105cm                    | TRIFIX <sup>2</sup> i-Size                      | Britax Römer | ISOFIX and TOP<br>TETHER                          |
| Group II (15 to 25<br>kg)   | KidFix i-Size                                   | Britax Römer | ISOFIX and<br>vehicle belt                        |
| Group III (22 to<br>36 kg)  | KidFix i-Size                                   | Britax Römer | ISOFIX and<br>vehicle belt                        |

Note: When using Britax Römer KidFix2 S, extend the SICT side impact extension to be within 5mm of the door trim or until fully extended. Insert the vehicle lap belt into the bright red SecureGuard. Do not place the vehicle diagonal belt into the bright red SecureGuard.

#### Top Tether



This model is equipped with top tether strap anchorages on the back of the rear seats.

Before using a top tether strap, remove the seating position head restraint and luggage compartment cover. With the child restraint on the seat, attach the top tether strap to the anchorage, and tighten to remove all slack. Refer to instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

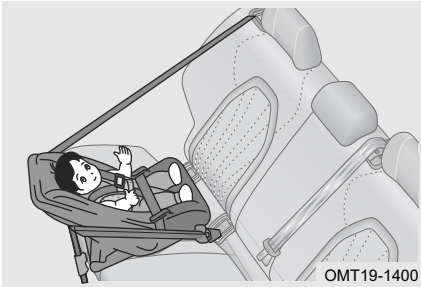
 **READ**

- Ensure all removed head restraints are stowed safely.
- After correct installation of the child restraint and top tether, the luggage compartment cover can be re-installed.

 **WARNING**

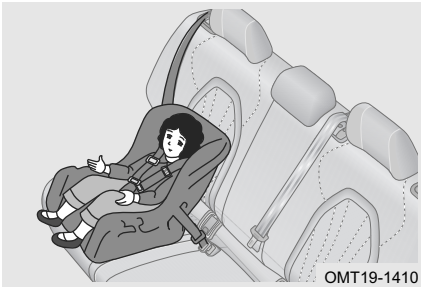
Ensure the top tether strap anchor is attached correctly. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to the child.

■ Rearward-facing child restraint system



A rearward facing child restraint is installed to face to the rear of the vehicle. Only install a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the airbag is OFF. It is recommended children use a rearward facing child restraint system up to 4yrs old.

■ Forward-facing child restraint system



A forward facing child restraint is installed to face to the front of the vehicle. It is recommended children use a forward facing child restraint system when older than 4yrs old.

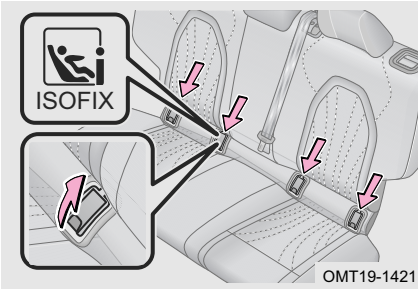
■ Booster seat child restraint system



For larger children that cannot fit in a child restraint system with a high back, they may occupy a second row outboard seat using a booster seat, either attached to the lower anchorage points or belted, as described in the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

#### Installing Child Restraint Systems



The rear outboard seats are equipped with ISOFIX / i-Size anchorages. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see illustration) located on the seat back, directly above the associated anchorages. Lift or remove the ISOFIX cover to access the anchorages.

#### ■ Size class for child restraint systems (ISOFIX):

We recommend that children should use an appropriate child restraint system, and it is recommended that they are seated on a rear outboard seat.

| Size Class | Fixing Device | Description   |
|------------|---------------|---|
| A          | ISO/F3        | Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems   |
| B          | ISO/F2        | Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems |
| B1         | ISO/F2X       | Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems |
| C          | ISO/R3        | Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems    |
| D          | ISO/R2        | Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems  |
| E          | ISO/R1        | Rearward-facing infant seat                           |
| F          | ISO/L1        | Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat            |
| G          | ISO/L2        | Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat           |

#### ■ Table for locations of ISOFIX child seats:

| Weight Groups | Size Class | Fixing Device | Front Passenger Seat | Second Row Outside Seat | Second Row Center Seat |
|---------------|------------|---------------|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Carrycot      | F          | ISO/L1        | X                    | X                       | X                      |
|               | G          | ISO/L2        | X                    | X                       | X                      |
|               |            | (1)           |                      |                         |                        |

|                           |    |         |   |         |   |
|---------------------------|----|---------|---|---------|---|
| Group 0<br>(Up to 10 kg)  | F  | ISO/L1  | X | X       | X |
|                           | G  | ISO/L2  | X | X       | X |
|                           | E  | ISO/R1  | X | IL      | X |
|                           |    | (1)     |   |         |   |
| Group 0+<br>(Up to 13 kg) | E  | ISO/R1  | X | IL      | X |
|                           | D  | ISO/R2  | X | IL      | X |
|                           | C  | ISO/R3  | X | IL      | X |
|                           |    | (1)     |   |         |   |
| Group I (9 to 18 kg)      | D  | ISO/R2  | X | IL      | X |
|                           | C  | ISO/R3  | X | IL      | X |
|                           | B  | ISO/F2  | X | IL, IUF | X |
|                           | B1 | ISO/F2X | X | IL, IUF | X |
|                           | A  | ISO/F3  | X | IL, IUF | X |
|                           |    | (1)     |   |         |   |
| Group II (15 to 25 kg)    |    | (1)     |   |         |   |
| Group III (22 to 36 kg)   |    | (1)     |   |         |   |

- X: ISOFIX position is not suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of this weight group or this size classification.
- IL: It is suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of special class in the list. These restraint systems may be special vehicle class, restricted class or semi-universal class.
- IUF: It is suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of forward-facing universal class approved by this weight group.
- (1): Child restraint system without ISO/XX size identification (A to G). Please refer to the table of Recommended Child Restraint Systems.

■ Table for locations of i-Size child seats:

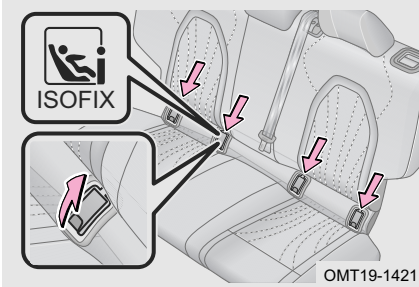
| Child Restraint System Types     | Front Passenger Seat | Second Row Outside Seat | Second Row Center Seat |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Child restraint systems (i-Size) | X                    | i-U                     | X                      |

i-U: It is suitable for "universal" forward-facing and rearward-facing child restraint systems (i-Size).

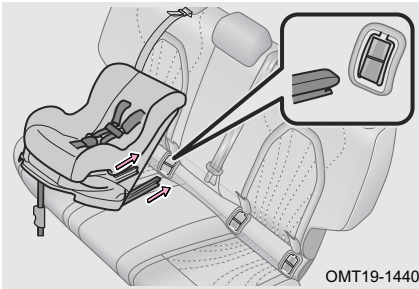
X: It is not suitable for "universal" child restraint systems.

### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

#### Installing Child Restraint Systems

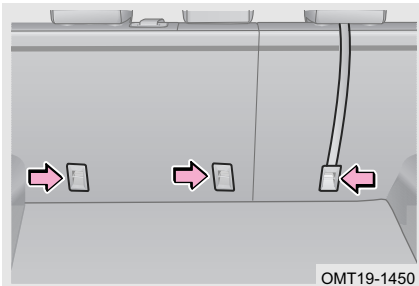


Locate the ISOFIX anchorage;



Place the child restraint system on the rear outboard seat;

Attach the child restraint ISOFIX probe to the anchorage. Where necessary extend the child restraint support leg.



Where a top tether strap is required, route, correctly attach and tighten the top tether strap to the top tether anchorage.

Note: If a luggage cover is present, it will need to be removed, to allow the upper tether access to the anchor point.

Note: Refer to the child restraint system instructions whether it needs to be secured by an upper tether belt.

#### READ

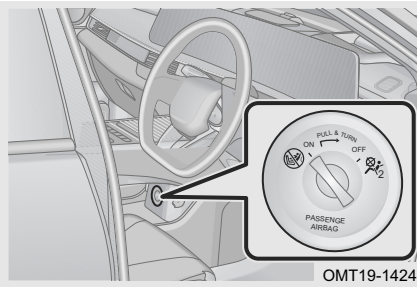
- If it interferes with the installation, the head restraint can be removed from the seat the child restraint system is installed on.
- After attaching the upper tether to the anchor point, be sure to tighten the tether and ensure it is secure. For the specific method of fixing and tightening upper tether of the child restraint system, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- Before installing the child restraint system that uses an upper tether, the head restraint must first be removed. This will limit or prevent interaction of the head restraint with the upper tether. In addition, any luggage cover present must first be removed.

 **WARNING**

- After installing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- It is recommended child restraint systems are installed on the rear outboard seats.
- Never fix more than one child restraint system to one set of anchor points.
- Do not allow the upper tether to cross or pass the head restraint and be sure to tighten the tether after installing. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to children.
- For the vehicle equipped with a luggage cover on the luggage compartment, the luggage cover must be removed before installing child restraint system to anchor points.
- If anchor point device is damaged or overloaded during an accident, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system on the rear seat behind the driver seat, install the child restraint system on the rear seat behind the front passenger.
- Do not use child restraint system anchor bracket to secure items other than child restraint system. We will not be liable for any accident caused this way.
- If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or passengers may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- Make sure the top tether is securely latched, and check if the child restraint system is secured by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer. If the child restraint system is not correctly installed, the child may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- If the child restraint system on the rear seat interferes with the front seat, after all correct adjustments, do not install the child restraint system in that seat position; The child and front passenger may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- Whether the child restraint system is in use or not in use, it should always be secure and fixed properly to the seat; Do not place unsecure child restraint systems on any passenger seats.

### 3. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

#### Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag



Airbag enabling/disabling switch is located below the auxiliary fascia console.

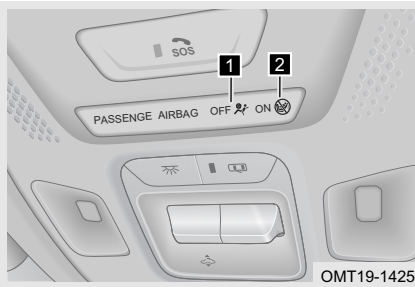
#### ■ Disabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch to OFF position while pulling the switch outward, the front passenger airbag is disabled and the disabling status indicator will come on.

#### ■ Enabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch from OFF to ON, re-enable the front passenger airbag and the enabling status indicator will come on. It is now safe to sit in the front passenger seat.

#### Airbag status indicator



**1** Disabling status indication

**2** Enabling status indication

#### WARNING

- Remember to subsequently enable the front passenger airbag when an adult occupant is seated in the front passenger seat. It is the driver's responsibility to confirm the passenger airbag status is correct for the occupant in the front passenger seat.
- In the event a rearward facing child restraint system needs to be installed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be disabled. Otherwise, it may cause serious injury or even death to young children in the event of an accident.



## Child Presence Detection in Rear Seat (If Equipped)

### ■ Introduction

Child Presence Detection function in rear seat is to identify if driver forgets the child in rear seat by mistake by judging the rear door switch sensor, and to remind driver through the emergency flashers. The vehicle activates a reminder when either of the following trigger conditions is met.

### ■ Warning trigger condition

1. Before starting driving, any rear door has been opened. If any rear door is not opened again before stopping and locking the vehicle, warning signal will be sent.
2. Before starting driving, rear doors on both sides have been opened. If only one side of the door is opened again before locking the vehicle, warning signal will be sent after locking the vehicle.

Note: Since the vehicle is judged by rear door switch sensor, the occurrence of false alarm cannot be ruled out.

### ■ Temporary system suspension

The system allows temporary suspension. IN the In-Car menu inside the vehicle Settings, there is a temporary off switch for this feature. Turn off the reminding function once through this switch when there is no need to remind temporarily. However, when the vehicle starts and drives next time, the switch will return to "ON" state by default.



|                              |     |                                     |     |
|------------------------------|-----|-------------------------------------|-----|
| 4-1. Key Information         |     | Voice Recognition                   |     |
| Smart Key .....              | 89  | Function .....                      | 111 |
| Effective Range .....        | 92  | Phone-link.....                     | 111 |
| Keyless Entry .....          | 93  | 4-6. Air Conditioning System        |     |
| Vehicle Arming.....          | 95  | Air Conditioning System ....        | 114 |
| Immobilizer System .....     | 96  | A/C Setting.....                    | 119 |
| Smart Key Vehicle            |     | Air Conditioning Heating            |     |
| Locating.....                | 97  | Operation.....                      | 119 |
| Remote Starting for          |     | Air Conditioning Cooling            |     |
| Smart Key .....              | 97  | Operation.....                      | 119 |
| 4-2. Doors                   |     | Air Outlets Airflow                 |     |
| Door Unlocking/Locking ..... | 97  | Control .....                       | 121 |
| Door Mechanical Switch.....  | 98  | Refrigeration/Warming               |     |
| Child Lock .....             | 100 | Function of Armrest Box....         | 121 |
| 4-3. Windows                 |     | 4-7. Driving Recorder               |     |
| Power Windows .....          | 100 | Driving Recorder (If                |     |
| Window Remote Control        |     | Equipped) .....                     | 121 |
| Function .....               | 102 | Setting.....                        | 124 |
| Window Jam Protection        |     | 4-8. Wireless Charging              |     |
| Function (If Equipped).....  | 102 | Wireless Charging.....              | 125 |
| 4-4. Power Moon Roof         |     | 4-9. Storage Space                  |     |
| Power Moon Roof .....        | 104 | Storage Space.....                  | 126 |
| Moon Roof Remote             |     | 4-10. Power Outlet                  |     |
| Control Function .....       | 105 | Front Power Outlet .....            | 128 |
| Moon Roof Jam                |     | 4-11. USB Port                      |     |
| Protection Function .....    | 105 | Front USB Port .....                | 128 |
| 4-5. Audio System            |     | Rear USB Port.....                  | 129 |
| Audio View .....             | 106 | 4-12. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors |     |
| Shortcut Menu .....          | 107 | Sun Visors and Vanity               |     |
| Local Settings.....          | 107 | Mirrors.....                        | 129 |
| Vehicle Settings .....       | 107 |                                     |     |
| Audio Button.....            | 110 |                                     |     |

## INTERIOR FUNCTION

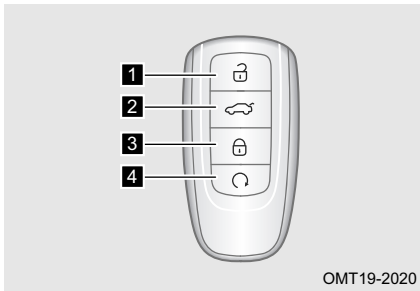
---

|  |   |
|--|---|
| 4-13. Front Compartment<br>Cover                     | Power Boot Door ..... 131               |
| Opening/Closing Front<br>Compartment Cover ..... 129 | Boot Door Emergency<br>Opening..... 136 |
| 4-14. Boot door                                      |   |
| Manual Boot door..... 130                            |   |

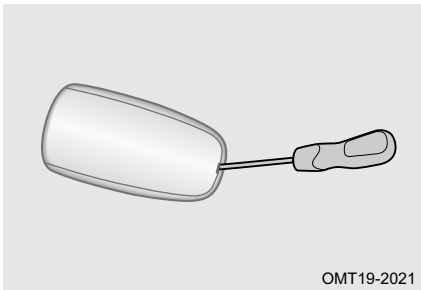
## 4-1. Key Information

## Smart Key

Smart key is used to remotely lock/unlock doors and open boot door within about 20 m (no blind spot and magnetic interference) of the vehicle (varies depending on the configuration of vehicle models).



- 1 Unlock button
- 2 Boot door opener button
- 3 Lock button
- 4 Remote starting button



The mechanical key built into the smart key can be used to lock/unlock doors in emergency after prying off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape and taking out mechanical key. After use, return it to original place for easy-to-carry (for details, refer to "Door").

## Function limit

- In the following conditions, the smart key may not work properly:
  1. There are more than one smart key being used nearby.
  2. The distance between vehicle and smart key is over 20 m.
  3. The smart key is in contact with, or is covered by a metallic object.
  4. The smart key is placed near an electrical appliance (such as mobile phone or personal computer).
  5. The key is near wireless communication devices that have the similar frequency with the remote control key (such as portable radio).
  6. The key is near facilities that generate strong radio waves (such as TV tower, radio station, power station, airport, train station).

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

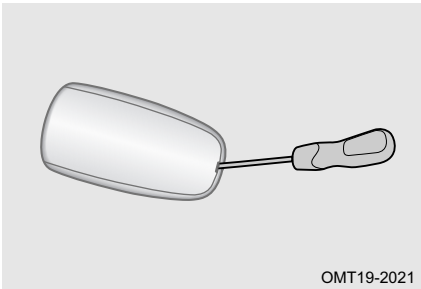
### CAUTION

- This product is a low frequency radio device and can be interfered by various radio services or radiation from industrial, scientific and medical equipment.
- Do not change the transmitting frequency, increase the transmitter power (including installation of the wireless RF power amplifier), or install an external or other transmitting antenna without permission.
- When using the product, do not interfere with legal wireless communications; In case of interference, immediately stop using and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.

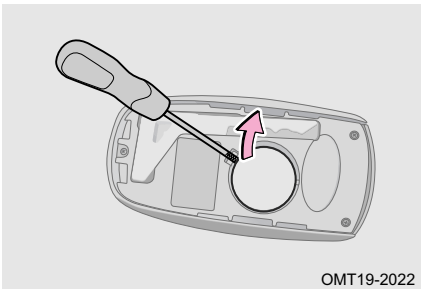
If any of the following conditions occurs, the smart key battery may be low or depleted:

1. The remote control range gradually decreases.
2. Remote control function does not work even there is no interference.
3. Instrument cluster prompts "Smart key battery is low".

### Replacing smart key battery



Step 1: Pry off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped;



Step 2: Pry off battery cover using a flat head screwdriver with the tip taped, and remove the battery.

Step 3: Install new battery with the positive (+) side up;

Step 4: Install battery cover;

Step 5: After replacing the battery, check if the smart key operates properly. If the smart key cannot operate properly, please contact Chery authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible;

 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used lithium battery cannot be handled as general household rubbish, please handle used battery according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

 READ

- Make sure that positive and negative terminals of battery are placed correctly.
- Smart key battery model: 3V-CR2032 lithium battery.

 CAUTION

- Only use the recommended battery type.
- Do not bend electrode and terminal when installing battery.
- Make sure your hands are dry and keep away from water when replacing the battery.
- Do not touch new battery with oily hand. Failure to do so may cause battery corrosion.
- Do not touch or move any components inside the smart key, or its functions may not work properly.
- There are some difficulties in replacement of battery, damage may be caused when replacing it by yourself. It is recommended to replace at authorized service centre.

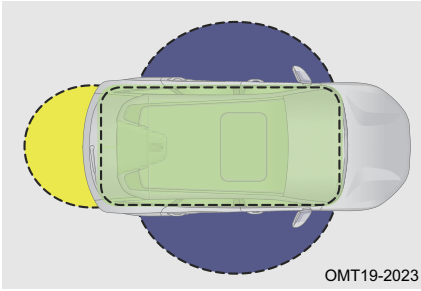
 WARNING

- Take special care to prevent children from swallowing the removed battery or other components, failure to do so may cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Do not swallow the battery. Doing so may cause chemical burns.
- If you accidentally swallow a battery or put a battery into a part of your body, get emergency medical attention immediately.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, the battery can cause severe or fatal injuries within 2 hours or less. Button batteries are hazardous whether new or used. Keep batteries out of reach of children.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### Effective Range

#### Detectable area



**Starting or switching power area**

Start or switch power mode when smart key is inside the vehicle.

**Unlocking/locking area**

Unlock/lock the doors when smart key is within effective range of high performance low-frequency antenna of door.

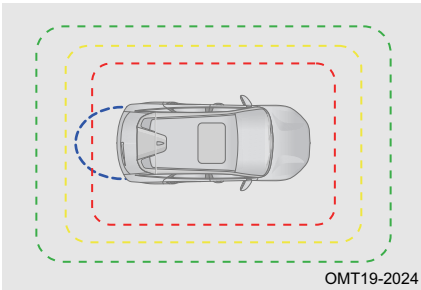
**Opening boot door area**

Open the boot door when smart key is within effective range of luggage compartment outside low-frequency antenna.

#### READ

Low-frequency antenna can detect areas within 1.5 m away from smart key. Therefore, when using keyless entry or one-button start function, ensure that distance between smart key and low-frequency antenna meets the requirement.

#### Automatic sensing area



**Smart welcome lights ON area**

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the welcome lights will turn on.

**Away from locking area**

Leave the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors will lock automatically.

**Approaching to unlocking area**

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors will unlock automatically.

**Smart opening boot door area**

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors cannot unlock/lock automatically (for details about boot door sensing open function, refer to "Boot Door").



 READ

- Please leave the vehicle after the four doors and boot door are closed, otherwise, the automatic sensing lock function may not work properly.
- Functions such as keyless entry, one-button start, welcome function, approach unlocking, away locking etc. may be affected due to the interference of surrounding environment while carrying smart key on your person. When the functions are abnormal, please change to other methods (such as manual unlocking, remote unlocking) to unlock/lock or start the vehicle.

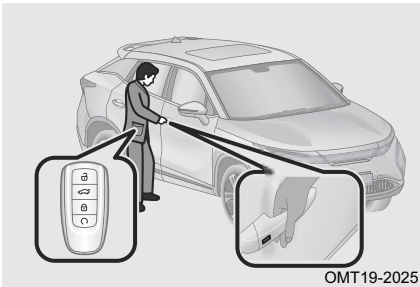
### Function limit

■ Smart key may not be detected in the following conditions:

1. Smart key is in luggage compartment.
2. When locking doors, smart key is too close to the window or roof.
3. Check if the smart key is placed together with strong electromagnetic interference sources (such as portable power source, interphone or other phones).

### Keyless Entry

#### Unlocking doors

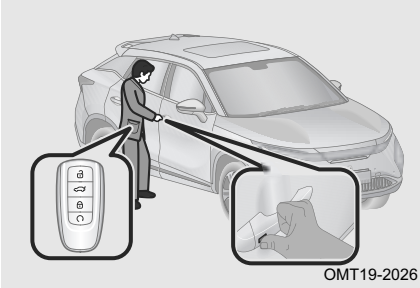


Method 1: Touch the unlock sensing area with four fingers while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors unlock automatically.

Method 2: Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, welcome lights turn on, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors unlock automatically.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### Locking doors



Method 1: Touch the lock sensing area with fingers while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors lock automatically.

Method 2: Leave vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors lock automatically.

#### READ

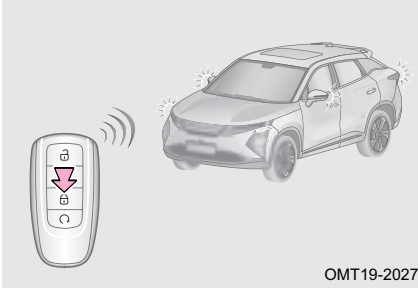
- Approaching unlocking/away locking needs to be set in audio system (for details, refer to "Audio System").
- Approaching unlocking/away locking function will be turned off after 3 days since vehicle is locked. Restarting the vehicle will resume the sensing unlocking/locking function.

#### CAUTION

- Do not put smart key next to computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc., otherwise, failure to sense lock/unlock may occur.
- Smart key sensing lock function can be operated only when vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, all doors and boot door are completely closed and smart key is not stored in vehicle.
- After exiting and closing all doors and boot door, if smart key is left in vehicle or there is no smart key around vehicle within approximately 2.5 m, smart key sensing active lock function will not be activated.
- If smart key is brought outside the range of approximately 2.5 m of the vehicle and indicator signal lights do not flash and horn does not sound (--successful arming prompted), inspect if the vehicle is locked to avoid locking failure caused by misoperation or unsatisfied condition.
- After smart key sensing active locking/unlocking function is activated, if smart key keeps near the vehicle for more than 3 minutes, the vehicle will lock automatically, if the key still does not leave for another 3 minutes, for the purpose of power saving, smart key sensing function will be temporarily turned off, and it can only be reactivated by opening any door or boot door and then closing all doors and boot door.

## Vehicle Arming

### Arming operation



#### ■ Arming mode

With vehicle power switched to OFF mode, four doors and front compartment cover and boot door closed, press the smart key lock button or touch the lock sensing area with fingers or leave the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the door will automatically lock and enter the arming status.

Successful arming prompt: Indicator signal lights flash once and anti-theft horn sounds once.

Arming failure prompt: Indicator signal lights flash twice and anti-theft horn does not sound.

#### ■ Secondary arming mode

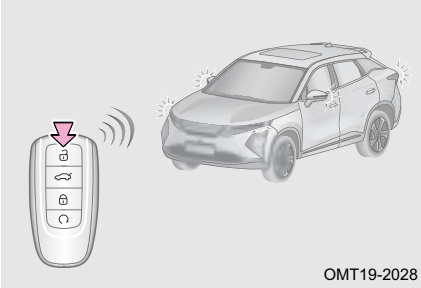
After the vehicle arming is deactivated, if four doors, front compartment cover and boot door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and enter arming state after 30 seconds. If any of the four doors, front compartment cover and boot door is opened, the vehicle will exit secondary arming mode.

#### READ

- Arming prompt needs to be set in audio system (for details, refer to "Audio System").
- Vehicle arming cannot be set if vehicle power is not switched to OFF mode.
- If four doors are closed, front compartment cover or boot door is not closed completely, the central lock will lock once and vehicle arming is not set successfully.
- If front compartment cover and boot door are closed and any door is not closed, the central lock will lock and then unlock, and vehicle arming is not set successfully.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### Disarming operation



Press unlock button on smart key or touch the unlock sensing area with four fingers or approach vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors unlock automatically, then vehicle exits from arming mode.

Successful disarming prompt: Indicator signal lights flash twice.

### Immobilizer System

#### Immobilizer system

Smart key has a built-in transponder chip. If the smart key is not pre-matched into immobilizer module, the built-in chip will prevent it from starting.

■ In the following conditions, the immobilizer system may not work properly:

1. Smart key is in contact with a metallic object.
2. Modify or remove immobilizer system.
3. Smart key is too close to or contacts smart key (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not match the smart key by yourself, otherwise the immobilizer system may not work properly.
- If the vehicle fails to start, but the starter works normally, it may be due to the interference of immobilizer system, please contact authorized service centre immediately for inspection and repair immediately.

#### Vehicle anti-theft system

When vehicle is in arming mode and illegal entry is detected, the vehicle anti-theft system will send sound-light alarm, alerting owner that the vehicle is in an illegal opening state.

 READ

- The vehicle anti-theft system will not be enabled if the doors are locked by mechanical key. It is recommended to lock doors by smart key.
- After locking doors with smart key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be triggered if front left door is unlocked and opened by mechanical key.
- When vehicle anti-theft system is triggered, vehicle anti-theft system can be deactivated by pressing unlock button on smart key or switching if the vehicle power to ON mode.
- To prevent unexpected triggering of vehicle anti-theft system or vehicle theft, before leaving the vehicle, check that nobody is in vehicle, all doors and windows are closed properly and vehicle is armed successfully.

### Smart Key Vehicle Locating

Press lock button on smart key twice continuously within several seconds, horn sounds 6 times, at the same time, turn signal lights flash 10 times, this allows you to find your vehicle easily.

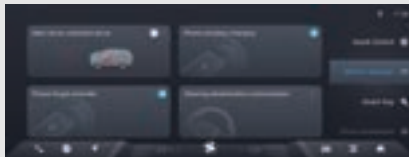
### Remote Starting for Smart Key

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, vehicle is in arming mode and smart key is not in vehicle, long press lock button or remote starting button on smart key for several seconds to start the A/C operates. The vehicle will automatically shut off after 10 minutes of remote starting.

## 4-2. Doors

### Door Unlocking/Locking

#### Independent driver door unlocking



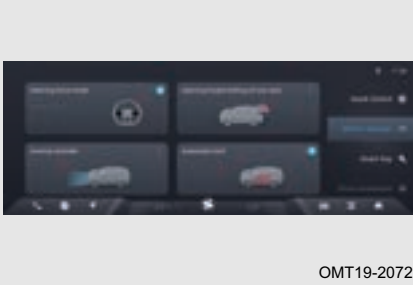
OMT19-2068

Turn on Independent Driver Door Unlocking through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings.

Only the driver door is unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the first time. Other three doors are unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the second time.

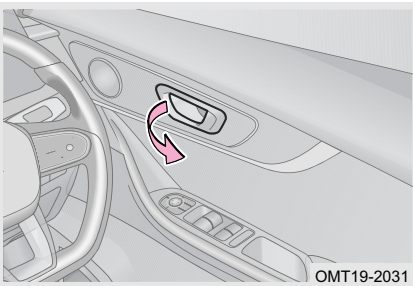
## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### Automatic door locking



Turn vehicle power to ON mode. Turn on Automatic lock through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Body; Doors are automatically locked when four doors are closed and vehicle speed is more than 9 mph (15 km/h).

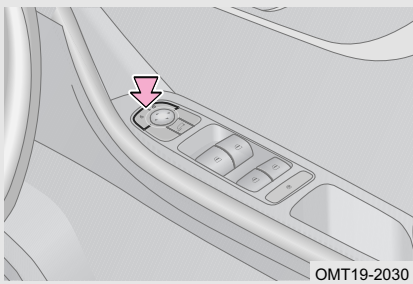
### Manual door unlocking





When doors are unlocked, pull door inside handle directly to open doors.

When doors are locked, pull door inside handle for the first time to unlock the doors, and pull it again to open the doors.

### Power door unlocking/locking

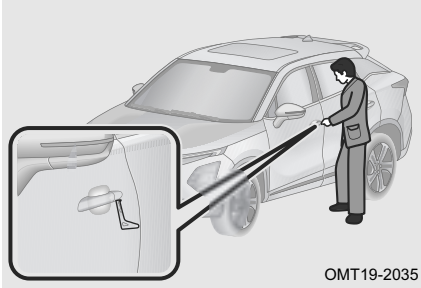


Press "  " button to unlock the door; Press "  " button (indicator comes on) to lock the door.

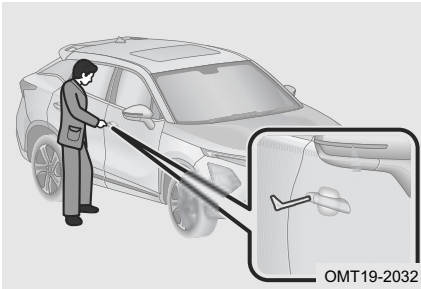
### Door Mechanical Switch

Vehicle cannot be unlocked/locked electrically when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the doors can be unlocked/locked with door mechanical switch.

### Locking/unlocking front right door manually

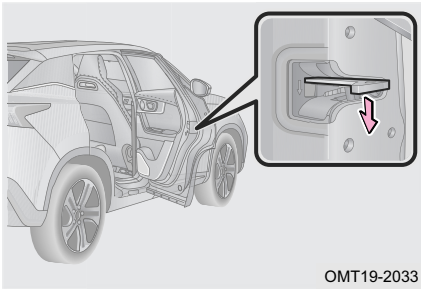


Step 1: Insert mechanical key into hole under front left door handle cover. Turn the key upwards to pry off the cover;



Step 2: Insert the mechanical key into the front left door key hole, turn the key clockwise to lock the door, and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the door.

### Locking front left door/second row doors



Step 1: Along the door panel edge lock body, press the lock knob with mechanical key or proper flat screwdriver, thus the locking operation on the front left door/second row door can be achieved;

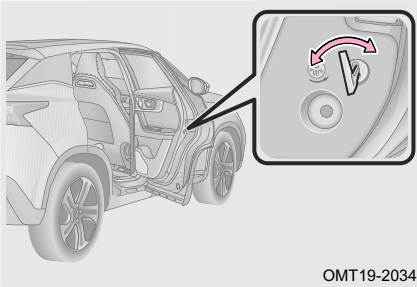
Step 2: Close the front left door/second row door and pull the door outside handle to ensure that the door is locked.

#### READ

- If the doors cannot be unlocked/locked electrically, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When using door mechanical switch, please check if the doors are locked successfully one by one after locking. If unsuccessful, please contact authorized service centre as soon as possible.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### Child Lock



The child lock is located on inside of second row doors.

**Lock:** Use mechanical key or a suitable flat screwdriver to turn in the direction of arrow to lock the child lock.

**Unlock:** Use mechanical key or a suitable flat screwdriver to turn in the opposite direction of arrow to unlock the child lock.

#### WARNING

- The system is independent and cannot replace the central lock mechanism in any case.
- Make sure that all doors are closed before driving, otherwise accidents and personal injury may be caused.
- When a child is seated on the rear seats, always lock the child lock to prevent the second row doors being opened accidentally while driving.
- In the case of an accident, when the child lock is activated and there is someone in vehicle, remember that, the second row doors can only be opened from outside.
- In hot weather, if vehicle stalls and all doors and windows close, do not allow any animal or child in vehicle alone. Otherwise, serious injury or even death may be caused by the sharp temperature rise even if it is a short time.

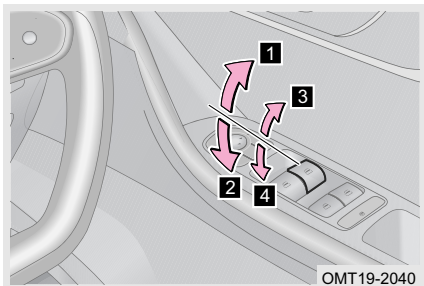
### 4-3. Windows

#### Power Windows

There are many ways to open/close windows, such as by window switch, remote control and voice recognition function.

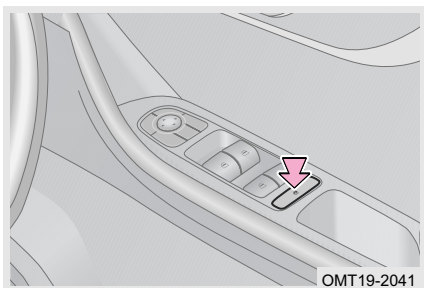


## Usage methods



Operate power window switch after vehicle power is switched to ON mode:

- 1** Pull the switch to top to make window go up automatically; press it again to stop moving the window.
- 2** Press the switch to bottom to make window go down automatically; press it again to stop moving the window.
- 3** Pull the switch upwards by one level to make window go up; release the switch to stop moving the window.
- 4** Press the switch downwards by one level to make window go down; release the switch to stop moving the window.



Press "OFF" button, passenger side window OFF switch indicator comes on. After disabling, passenger side windows only can be operated by driver side window switch (this function is recommended when there is a child in vehicle).

## READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System".
- For details about remote window control, refer to "Remote Control System".
- Only vehicles with window jam protection function have one-touch window up function.
- At the moment of vehicle starting, window up and down operation will be suspended to provide large current for starting.
- If the door is not opened within 2 minutes while vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, the power window can be operated.
- After leaving vehicle in low temperature environment for a long time, when operating power window switch, window glass cannot be fully opened or closed. In this case, release the switch and then operate it again, repeat this operation 3 - 5 cycles to resume.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### WARNING

- To avoid personal injury, it is driver's responsibility to guide all passengers to operate power window up/down switch and especially to prevent children from using it incorrectly. Ensure that vehicle power has been switched to OFF mode or non-mechanical device is closed when leaving the vehicle.
- Take extra care when closing windows, failure to do so may cause serious jamming and injury! Models without window jam protection function, when window glass rises, passenger body may be caught, resulting in serious injury. For models with window jam protection function, jam protection function can be activated in jam protection area to protect passenger. However, for the thin or soft objects, jam protection function may not be activated, resulting in serious injury.

### Window Remote Control Function

#### Remote control window down function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed and hold, windows of four doors will go down automatically. If unlock button on smart key is released or any door is opened in this process, window will stop going down.

#### Remote control window up function (if equipped)

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed, lock button on smart key is pressed, the vehicle will enter arming status and four door window will go up automatically. Unlock/lock doors in automatic window up process and windows will stop going down.

### READ

If abnormal closing occurs during remote control one-touch window up, turn signal lights flash once and horn continuously sounds 5 times to alarm user that window may not close normally.

### WARNING

Before using remote control up window function, please take extra care. Remote control up/down window function can be used only when the vehicle can be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by window.

### Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)

#### Jam protection function

During one-touch window up or remote control one-touch window up, if obstacle is encountered in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a

certain value, window will stop rising and go down slightly. To close window, move away obstacle and operate again.

To protect the window regulation system, window jam protection function and one-touch window up function will be canceled in some conditions to avoid potential safety hazard. At this time, the window only has the conventional up-down function. After jam protection learning, the one-touch window up function of corresponding door will return to normal.

### Canceling jam protection function

If obstacle is encountered twice continuously when rising the window, the window will stop rising, jam protection function will be canceled. If the battery cable is disconnected during working or non-working process, jam protection function will be canceled.

### Overheat protection function

To protect motor, if window up-down operation is performed continuously, overheat protection function actively disables the control of corresponding window switch. After motor temperature returns to normal, it recovers. This function will not affect the use of other normal window up-down functions.

### Manual learning function

If one-touch window up function and jam protection function do not operate, perform the following steps to resume function. Make sure that there are no obstacles within window range during learning.

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to ON mode;

Step 2: Manually and continuously operate window switch to fully close the window and hold at that position for 2 seconds, and then release the switch;

Step 3: Manually and continuously operate window switch to fully open the window and hold at that position for 2 seconds, and then release the switch;

Step 4: Try to operate automatic window up function;

Step 5: If window cannot go up automatically, please repeat the above steps to set.

If automatic window up function cannot resume after repeating the above steps, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Note: If window position memory setting is lost, it can also be set with remote control one-touch window up function. At this time, window will go down to bottom, then go up to top. Window if closed normally while setting is successful.

#### READ

When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces, gravity may affect door system unexpectedly. In this case, window may reverse and go down while rising by one-touch window up function. This is a small probability event and normal.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### CAUTION

- If battery cable is disconnected and reconnected, automatic window up function and jam protection function will not work.
- Jam protection function is a kind of window safety protection function. Never try to active it repeatedly using various objects, in improper methods or even by intentionally pinching any part of your body. Failure to do so may cause damage to window regulation system mechanism or accidental personal injury.
- When closing window, always keep the window close area clear even if it is equipped with jam protection function, otherwise, if there is a thin object and system cannot sense it, jam protection will not work. If someone's hand or finger is caught, extremely serious injury may be caused.

### 4-4. Power Moon Roof


#### Power Moon Roof


There are many ways to open/close moon roof, such as operating moon roof switch, remote control and voice recognition function.

#### Usage methods





#### ■ Tilting up/closing moon roof

Push "  " switch backward when moon roof is closed, the moon roof will tilt up.

When moon roof tilts up, push "  " switch forward, moon roof will close.

#### ■ Opening/closing moon roof

With moon roof tilted up, push "  " switch backward to slide and open the moon roof.

When moon roof is open, push "  " switch forward, moon roof will slide and close.

### READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System".
- For details about remote moon roof control, refer to "Remote Control System".
- If you find there is a false jam protection, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Failure in moon roof jam protection function may cause initial memory position to be lost, therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate the position.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and motor.
- If there is water on moon roof after raining, always wipe off any water or tilt moon roof up to drain the water away before opening it, to prevent water from flowing into cab.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water; after vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before use.

**⚠ WARNING**

Before closing moon roof, please take extra care. The vehicle should be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by it.

**Moon Roof Remote Control Function****Moon roof remote open function**

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode and four doors are closed, press and hold unlock button on smart key for a few seconds, the sunshade and moon roof are opened simultaneously; Press the lock button during opening of moon roof, the moon roof will stop moving.

**Moon roof remote close function**

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode and four doors are closed, press lock button on smart key, and vehicle enters arming mode and moon roof closes; press the lock button during closing of moon roof, the moon roof stops moving.

**Moon Roof Jam Protection Function****Jam protection function**

During closing of moon roof glass, it will automatically return under a certain resistance. When jam protection occurs in horizontal position, the moon roof glass will return near the half open position and stop. When jam protection occurs in vertical position, it will return near the tilt up position.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not pass body parts or objects out of the moon roof during opening and closing, even if it is equipped with jam protection function.

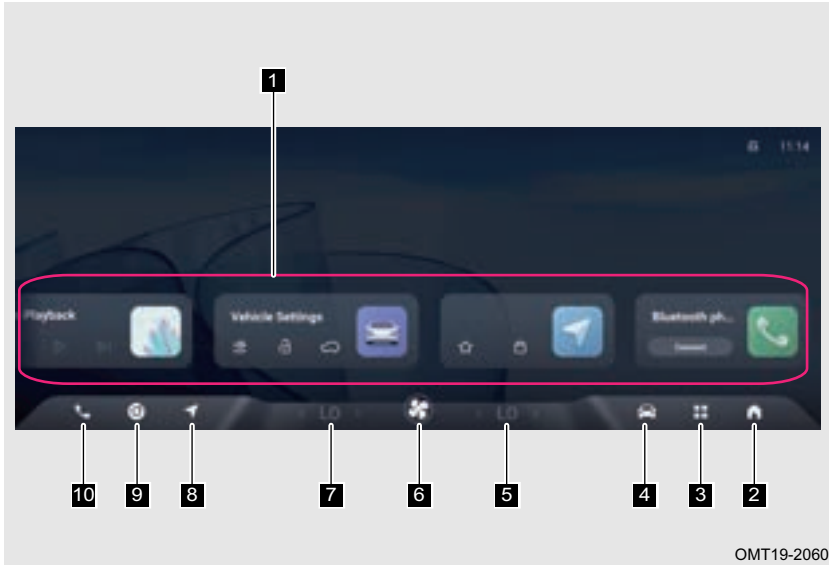
## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### Overheat protection function

Do not operate the moon roof frequently in a short time, otherwise the motor will overheat or enter the overheat protection state. After that, the moon roof will not respond to the key action. The overheat protection will be automatically released after the motor is cooled down.

### 4-5. Audio System

#### Audio View



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>1</b> Card interactive interface<br/>Swipe to view and click on the corresponding APP application to enter.</p> | <p><b>2</b> Home page<br/>Click to return to home page of audio system.</p>   |
| <p><b>3</b> APP application<br/>Click to enter APP application screen.</p>  | <p><b>4</b> Vehicle setting<br/>Click to enter vehicle setting screen.</p>    |
| <p><b>5</b> Driver temperature adjustment<br/>Click to adjust the air conditioning temperature for driver.</p>        | <p><b>6</b> Click to pop up the air conditioning system operation screen.</p> |

**7** Front passenger temperature adjustment  
Click to adjust air conditioning temperature for front passenger.

**8** Navigation  
Click to enter navigation screen.

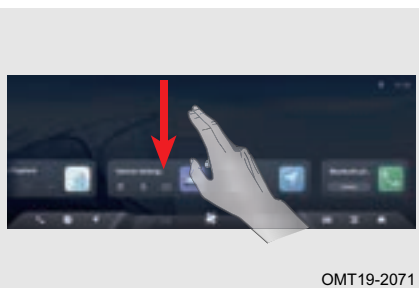
**9** Multimedia  
Click to enter media screen, including radio/DAB radio.

**10** Telephone  
Click to enter telephone or Bluetooth phone setting screen.

#### READ

- The radio has RDS function.
- Function buttons are different according to the vehicle configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

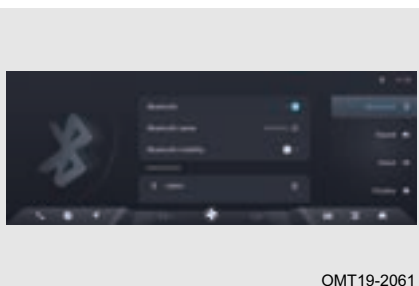
#### Shortcut Menu



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, slide down the audio screen to display shortcut menu screen and fault inquiry information.

You can set Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, power-off switch, and head up display on the shortcut menu.

#### Local Settings



Bluetooth, sound, voice, display, system and device management can be set by local setting.

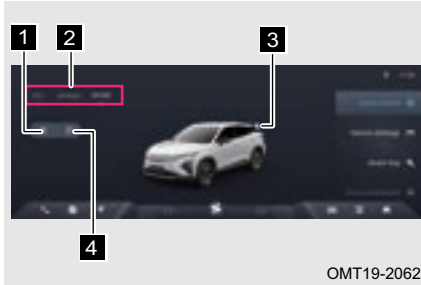
#### Vehicle Settings

#### READ

The setting items are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

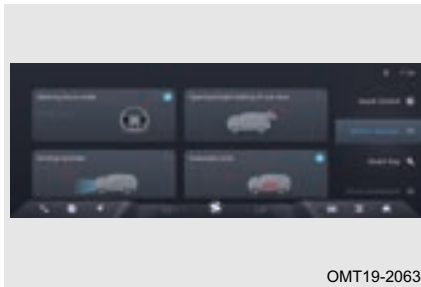
## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### Quick control



- 1 Passenger side window OFF switch.
- 2 Driving mode switching.
- 3 Click to enter the boot door control screen, click to open/close the Boot door.
- 4 Door unlock/lock switch.

### Vehicle settings



Steering mode: ON/OFF; Comfort/Sport can be set when closing.

Opening height setting of boot door: Set the opening height of power boot door.

Arming reminder: Set to light/lights and sperkers.

Automatic lock: ON/OFF.

Main driver unlocked alon: ON/OFF.

Phone wireless charging: ON/OFF.

Phone forget reminder: ON/OFF.

Steering wheel button customization: Set the vehicle settings/audio source switching.

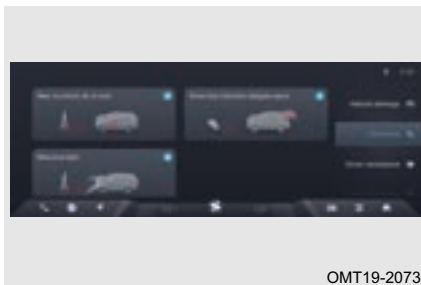
Maintenance Tips: ON/OFF.

Maintenance mileage reset: Reset the maintenance mileage.

Driving mode memory: ON/OFF.

Wiper sensitivity: Set Low/Standard/High/Maximum.

### Smart key



Near to unlock, far to lock: ON/OFF.

Smart key induction tailgate opens: ON/OFF.

Welcom light: ON/OFF.



**Driver Assistance**

OMT19-2074

Integrated adaptive cruise control function exit alert: ON/OFF.

Departure warning system: ON/OFF.

Speed limit assist: ON/OFF.

Overspeed alarm: ON/OFF;  
Overspeed alarm speed limit value can be set when turned off.

Intelligent speed control system: ON/OFF.

Intelligent high beam assist: ON/OFF.

Intelligent avoidance system: ON/OFF.

Front collision warning system: ON/OFF; Set Near/Standard/Far..

Automatic emergency braking system: ON/OFF.

Lane departure warning: ON/OFF; Set the sensitivity/alarm mode.

Lane departure intervention: ON/OFF.

Emergency lane keeping: ON/OFF.

Door opening alert: ON/OFF.

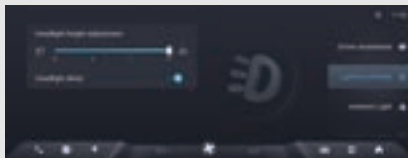
Blind spot detection system: ON/OFF.

Rear collision warning: ON/OFF.

Reverse lateral emergency braking: ON/OFF.

Braking feel linked to driving mode: ON/OFF; Set the brake feel mode.

Brake pitch control: ON/OFF; Set the sensitivity.

**Lighting settings**

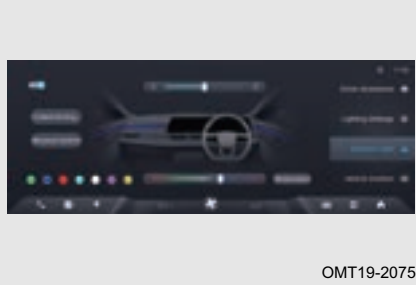
OMT19-2064

Headlight leveling adjusting: Slide to adjust the headlight leveling.

Headlight delay: ON/OFF.

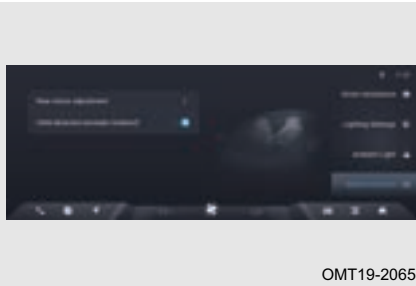
## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### Ambient light



Interior ambient light setting.

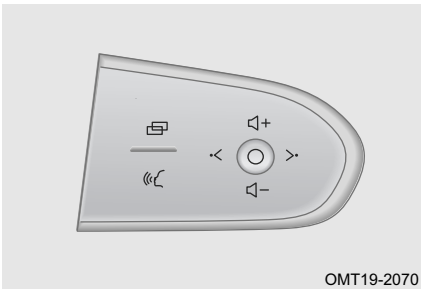
### Vehicle comfort



Rear mirror adjustment: Set the outside rear view mirror automatic folding, outside rear view mirror lens adjustment.

Child detected reminder (indirect): ON/OFF.

### Audio Button



Voice recognition button "☎": Short press to wake up the voice recognition function; Long press to wake up the phone voice assistant (it is necessary to connect with phone).

Switch button "☰": Short press to cycle the driving information screens on the instrument cluster.

OK button "O": Short press to pause the playback of music/radio; Long press to reset the mileage in Trip B interface; Long press to switch to the full-screen or half-screen map on the navigation interface.

Volume + button "◀+": Short press to increase volume.

Volume - button "▶-": Short press to decrease volume.

Left switching button "<": Short press to switch to previous track in music mode; Short press to switch to previous station in radio mode; Hang up while calling.

Right switching button ">": Short press to switch to next track in music mode; Short press to switch to next station in radio mode; Answer the call while calling.

### Voice Recognition Function

Voice recognition function can be enabled using the following methods when audio system is turned on:

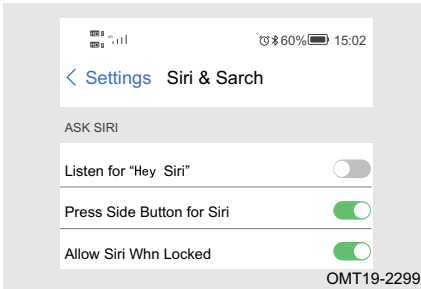
Method 1: Directly say the wake word to enable the voice recognition function.

Method 2: Short press the voice recognition button "☰" on steering wheel to enable the voice recognition function.

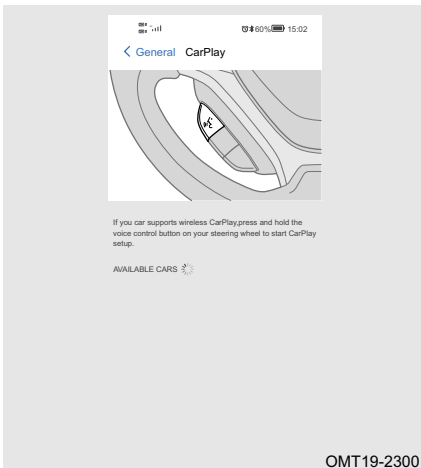
### Phone-link

#### Apple CarPlay (iOS)

##### ■ Connecting method

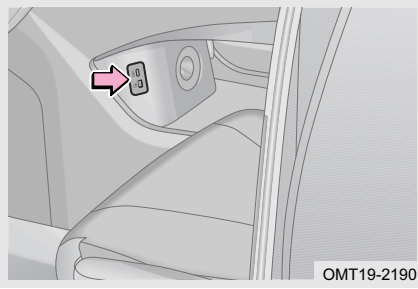


Step 1: Turn Listen for "Hey Siri" and Press Home for Siri to ON on Settings (Siri&search) screen of phone;




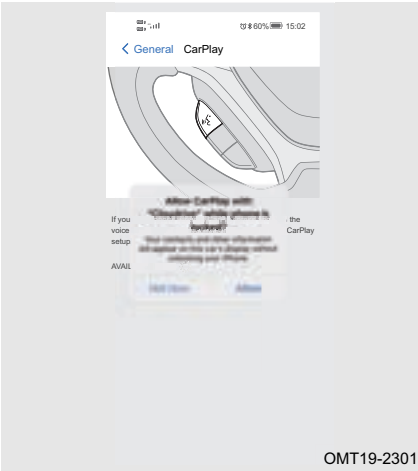
Step 2: Turn CarPlay to ON on Settings (General) screen of phone;

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION



Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port "  " supports Apple CarPlay screencast function.

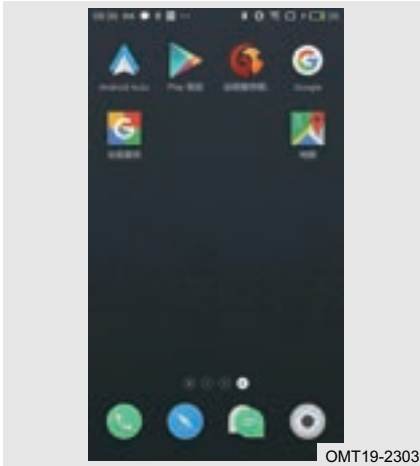


Step 4: Select Allow on CarPlay permission request screen;

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

## Android Auto (Android)

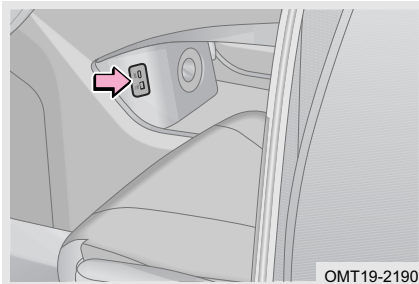
### ■ Connecting method



OMT19-2303

Step 1: Install the Google Framework;

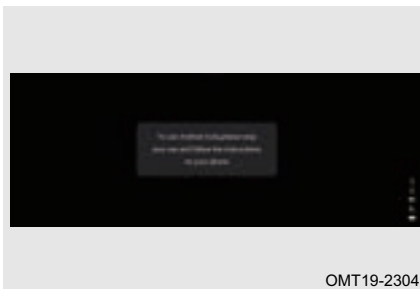
Step 2: Perform the installation in Google Play and run Android Auto, install all supporting softwares according to the system prompt and update the existing program, and then Android Auto can run normal after completing the update.



OMT19-2190

Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

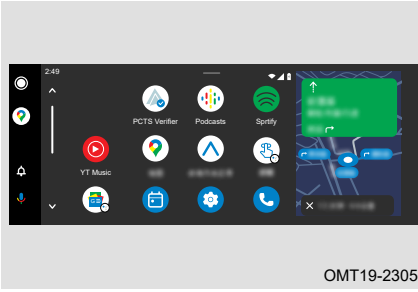
Note: Only USB port " " supports Android Auto screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.



OMT19-2304

Step 4: If this phone is connected to the vehicle for the first time (a prompt will pop up on the head unit, please operate according to the prompt on the mobile phone, stop the vehicle and apply the parking brake), then the first connection setting can be completed;

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

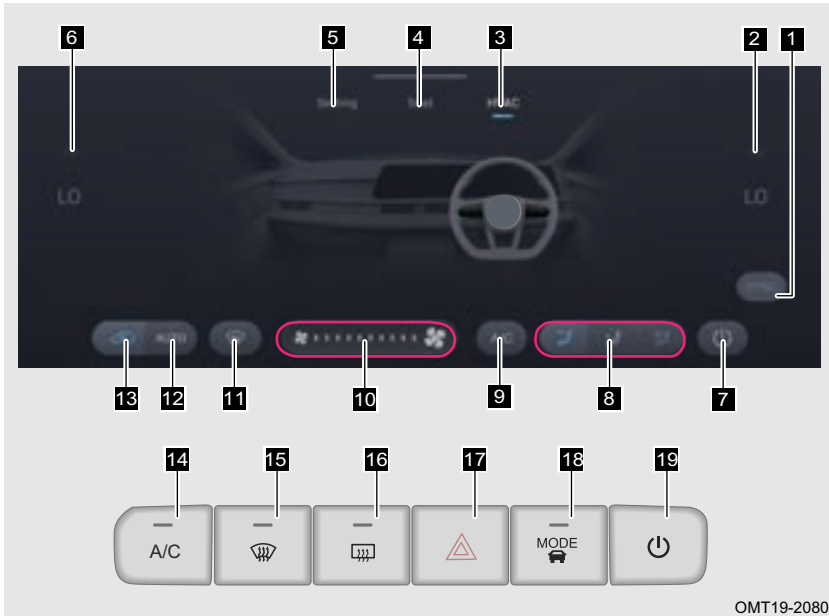


Step 5: Click "Android Auto" on the audio main screen to enter "Android Auto" mapping interface.

### 4-6. Air Conditioning System

#### Air Conditioning System

##### Automatic A/C



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>1</b> Dual mode button                       | <b>2</b> Driver temperature adjustment area          |
| <b>3</b> Air conditioning screen display button | <b>4</b> Seat screen display button                  |
| <b>5</b> Seat screen display button             | <b>6</b> Front passenger temperature adjustment area |
| <b>7</b> A/C switch button                      | <b>8</b> Mode adjustment button                      |

- 9** Mode adjustment button
- 10** Airflow volume adjustment area
- 11** Defogging and defrosting button
- 12** AUTO button
- 13** Outside/recirculated air mode button
- 14** A/C button
- 15** Front windshield defogging and defrosting button
- 16** Rear defrosting button
- 17** Hazard Light button
- 18** Driving mode button
- 19** Audio switch button

Note: Slide up the screen from the bottom of audio main screen or operate the air conditioning panel button to display the air conditioning system operation screen.

### Temperature adjustment

Operate the air conditioning panel and audio head unit temperature adjustment area to realize the temperature adjustment of air conditioning.

### Airflow volume adjustment

Operate the air conditioning panel and audio head unit air volume adjustment area to realize the air volume adjustment of air conditioning.

### A/C switch button

Click A/C switch button to realize on/off of air conditioning system.

### A/C button

Click A/C button to realize air conditioning cooling (air conditioning compressor starts to operate).

### Dual mode button

Click the dual mode button to switch between single mode/dual mode (Air conditioning temperature of driver/front passenger can be adjusted separately).

#### READ

System will memorize the user's operation before head unit is turned off last time by default when turning on head unit.

### Mode adjustment button

Click the mode adjustment button to realize mode adjustment. Window mode, face mode, and foot mode can be used separately or in combination, with a total of 7 modes: Window mode, face mode, foot mode, face and foot mode, foot and window mode, face and window mode, face, foot and window mode.

Window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from defroster outlet.

Foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot outlet.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Face mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face outlets on both sides.

Foot and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot and window outlets.

Face and foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face and foot outlets on both sides.

Face and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face and window outlets on both sides.

Face, foot and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face, foot and window outlets on both sides.

### READ

If windshield glass become fogged-up during driving, defrosting mode is recommended. Click the defogging and defrosting button.

### **Outside/recirculated air mode button**

The outside/recirculated air mode can be switched by clicking the outside/recirculated air mode button.

■ Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

1. In dusty environment.
2. To quickly cool the air in the vehicle.
3. Keep out smells from exterior.
4. To prevent outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.

### **AUTO button**

Click AUTO button to realize on/off of automatic mode.

■ System remains in automatic mode under following conditions:

1. Click AUTO button in automatic mode, and system does not exit the automatic mode.
2. In automatic mode, outside/recirculated air mode switches and the outside/recirculated function exits from the automatic control, and other functions are still in the automatic mode.
3. When operating A/C button or mode adjustment button, adjusting air volume or temperature to LOW/HI in automatic mode, the corresponding function will exit the automatic mode, however, other functions will still in automatic mode.

### **Air purification button**

Click air purification button to turn on (inside/outside PM2.5 value is displayed on audio head unit)/off the air purification function.

■ Air purification function turns off automatically under the following conditions:



1. Outside/recirculated air mode switches.
2. Airflow volume is adjusted to OFF.
3. Temperature is adjusted to LOW/HI.
4. Front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned on.

#### READ

- The air purification function effect in winter is not obvious due to low ambient temperature.
- When the air purification function is turned on, the outside/recirculated air mode is switched, and air volume and mode may change.
- Turn on air purification function to ensure that the vehicle is not fogged, the response method of automatic A/C in summer, winter, spring and autumn is not exactly the same, but purification effect can be achieved.
- Air purification function is inoperative and the button is deactivated in following conditions:
  - Air purification function cannot be turned on when temperature conditions are not met.
  - Air purification function cannot be turned on when front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned on.
  - When the wiper is turned on (in high speed or low speed), air purification function cannot be turned on after 20 seconds.

#### **Defogging and defrosting button**

After vehicle is started, click front windshield defogging and defrosting button to turn on (adjust airflow to make most of it blow to front windshield and small amount of it blow to side window) /off front windshield defogging and defrosting function.

When the airflow volume is turned on, operate front windshield defogging and defrosting button to turn on outside air mode and air conditioning compressor forcibly.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### READ

- If the A/C fails to cool, the defogging effect will be affected. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep A/C on. If A/C is off, the defogging effect will be affected.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep in outside air mode. If recirculated air mode is selected, the defogging effect will be affected.
- After defrosting or defogging, adjust mode and airflow volume to proper position to improve comfort in vehicle.
- When defogging in winter, please keep in outside air mode. To adjust to the direction of partial heat, make air outlets on both sides of the instrument panel face the both sides of windows; when outside temperature is above 0°C, A/C auxiliary defogging is needed.

### CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use the defogging function correctly.
- Do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in winter, otherwise the front windshield will be fogged up quickly.
- Poor glass visibility will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury. Therefore, it is very important for traffic safety to ensure a good visibility during driving.

### **Rear defrosting button**

After vehicle is started, click rear defrosting button to turn on/off rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function.

The rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function will turn off automatically after operating for about 20 minutes.

### CAUTION

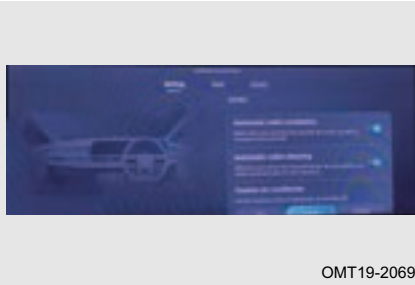
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror.
- When the battery is low, the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function may not be turned on to ensure the normal starting of vehicle.
- Make sure that the defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is turned off after defogging or defrosting the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror surface.

**⚠ WARNING**

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror when the defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is operating or immediately after being turned off.

**Front windshield heating (If Equipped)**

Press the touch button to turn on/off the function. Avoid turning on the front windshield heating function for a long time.

**A/C Setting**

OMT19-2069

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and the following functions can be set in A/C setting screen.

**Automatic cabin ventilation:** Before the user unlocks the car, the air in the car will be changed automatically.

**Automatic cabin cleaning:** After the user locks the car and leaves, the air conditioner starts automatically for self-cleaning.

**Custom air conditioner:** Set the working state of automatic air conditioner.

**Air Conditioning Heating Operation**

After vehicle is started, operate the air conditioning panel and audio head unit temperature adjustment area and air volume adjustment area; it is recommended to adjust mode to foot mode and turn off refrigeration system (A/C indicator turns off, and air conditioning compressor stops operating).

**Air Conditioning Cooling Operation****Automatic A/C**

After vehicle is started, click AUTO button and set A/C temperature to 22°C, then system automatically controls operation of mode, air volume, outside/recirculated air mode and refrigeration system.

■ For the best cooling effect, please keep the surface of A/C filter clean without obvious blockage, then operate as follows:

Step 1: Adjust air volume to the maximum level;

Step 2: Adjust temperature to Max Cool;

Step 3: Adjust outside/recirculated air mode to recirculated air mode;

Step 4: Adjust to face mode;

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Step 5: Turn on the refrigeration system (A/C indicator turns on, and air conditioning compressor starts operating).

### READ

- Dirt and blockage in the surface of air conditioning condenser may cause poor cooling effect, please keep condenser clean.
- When air cools down quickly in hot and humid conditions, the fog may be seen from outlet, which is a normal physical phenomenon.
- When the temperature is low, such as in winter, the A/C compressor may not be started even if indicator comes on after operating A/C button.
- After the A/C system cooling operation, some water may drip from the air conditioning drain pipe and form a pool under vehicle, which is normal.
- After temperature in vehicle decreases to a lower temperature, compressor will turn off automatically to reduce the influence on power of power system and power consumption, this is normal.
- Refrigerant filled in air conditioning system will decrease over time, if you feel that the refrigeration effect of air conditioning becomes poor, please go to a authorized service centre for inspection and repair in time.
- It is recommended to turn on air conditioning refrigeration system for 5 minutes or more every month and open the window simultaneously, this will help to prevent air conditioning system damage due to lack of lubricant, and also prevent evaporator odor due to moist and germs.
- During sudden acceleration, overtaking and climbing, power system needs more power for compensation. At this time, if the air conditioning is operating, the compressor may be turned off automatically, if it does not turn off automatically and you feel it is lack of power, it is recommended to turn off air conditioning.

### WARNING

- To extend service life of air conditioning system, do not use the air conditioning for a long time with low speed when performing air conditioning cooling.
- It is forbidden to repair air conditioning system by yourself, as the high pressure refrigerant in air conditioning system is harmful to human. It is necessary to go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair.
- Please purchase special refrigerant and compressor lubricant at the authorized service centre, or air conditioning system damages sustained by this are not under warranty.
- In hot weather, the temperature in closed vehicle will quickly increase due to sunshine, this may cause personal or animal injury or even death, especially for infants and very young children.

## Air Outlets Airflow Control

### Center outlets

Move center outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

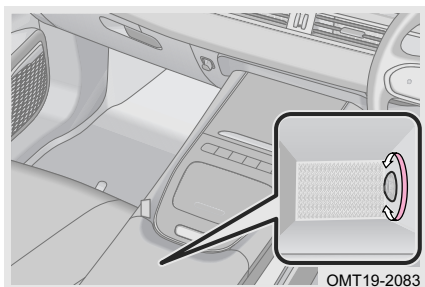
### Side outlets

Move left/right side outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

### Armrest outlets

Move armrest box outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

## Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box



Place the required items (such as packaged drinks) in armrest box on auxiliary fascia console, adjust A/C mode to face or face/foot mode and perform A/C refrigeration/warming operation, then rotate the internal knob of the armrest box counterclockwise to refrigerate/warm the required items.

### WARNING

Armrest box on auxiliary fascia console cannot be closed if the items is oversize. The opened armrest box may hinder the driver's arm movement, beware of injury.

## 4-7. Driving Recorder

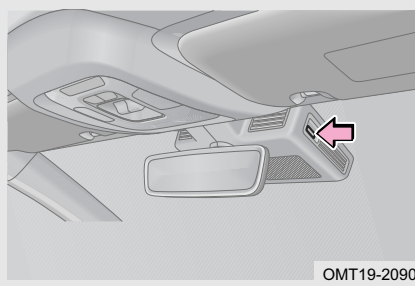
### Driving Recorder (If Equipped)

The driving recorder can record the video image and sound of the whole driving process, which can provide evidence for traffic accidents. People who like self-driving travel can also use it to record the process of overcoming difficulties and dangers. It records the time, speed and light in the video while driving, which is similar to a "black box".

### Installing TF card

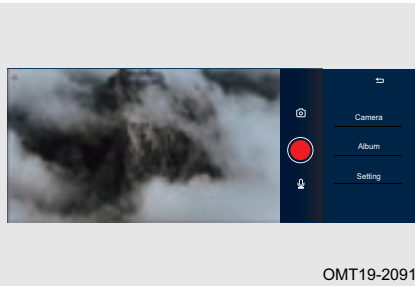
Please insert TF card of Class10 or above version before power on, and the partition format of the card is FAT32 or exFAT.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION



The TF card for vehicles without visual monitor system (CVBOX) is installed behind the inside rear view mirror (as shown in the illustration).

### Connection and display



The driving recorder is connected to the audio head unit through WiFi or hard wire and is displayed and operated on the audio head unit. Click driving recorder application to enter the real-time screen of it. Click the upper left corner to return to the audio main screen and exit the driving recorder screen.

#### READ


- There is a certain delay in WiFi transmission, so the real-time screen displayed on the audio head unit has a certain delay compared with the actual screen in front of the vehicle seen by the human eyes.
- The WiFi connection between the audio head unit and driving recorder may be disconnected after exiting the driving recorder. When click the driving recorder application again, it needs to reconnect WiFi. This process will take a certain time. Please wait patiently.

### Normal recording

Start vehicle, the driving recorder starts recording, the red dot on upper left corner of real-time screen on audio head unit flashes, and REC is displayed. And the time in middle of the screen increases by seconds.

The normal recording is recorded and stored in normal video folder by sections. When the normal video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten.

#### READ

- Under normal recording, the indicator light of the recorder is blue; Under abnormal conditions, the indicator light of the recorder is red.
- Click "  " on the real-time screen of audio head unit to turn on/off the sound recording which is off by default. Some configurations have no recording function. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not unplug the TF card directly during video recording. If the TF card is needed to unplug, please pause the recording or turn off driving recorder before unplugging.

**Emergency recording**

When the driving recorder is in normal working state, in case of collision, the driving recorder is not damaged and this function is activated, the video before and after the collision is recorded automatically for 10 s.

The emergency recording is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten, while the audio head unit will prompt with text: Driving recorder emergency video folder is full.

**📖 READ**

In case of accidental collision, the collision intensity may be insufficient or other factors may exist, which does not guarantee that emergency video files can be generated in each collision. If no emergency video is generated, you can find the video segment when the accident occurs in normal video folder.

**Parking monitoring**

In the shutdown mode, in case of collision, the driving recorder is not damaged and this function is activated, it will turn on and automatically record for 20 seconds, and then turn off.

The parking monitoring is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten, while the audio head unit will prompt with text: Driving recorder emergency video folder is full.

**📖 READ**

- The parking monitoring function is on by default and can be turned off by setting.
- When the battery power is lower than a certain voltage value and the parking monitoring function is turned on, the driving recorder cannot be enabled by vibration.
- In case of accidental collision, the collision intensity may be insufficient or other factors may exist, which does not guarantee that the driving recorder can enable every time to record video.

**Taking photos and snapshot**

Method 1: Click "📷" button on real-time screen of audio head unit to take photos, one photo at each time.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Method 2: Press the "☆" button to capture when driving recorder snapshot is customized through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Interior - Steering Wheel ☆ button.

### Photo/video playback

Click album on the real-time screen of the audio head unit to see the normal video "📁" folder, emergency video "📁" folder and photo "📁" folder in the memory card.

In the normal video or emergency video folder, slide up and down, select and click a video to enter the playback screen to play the video. You can pause, continue, switch to the previous/next video, and delete video.

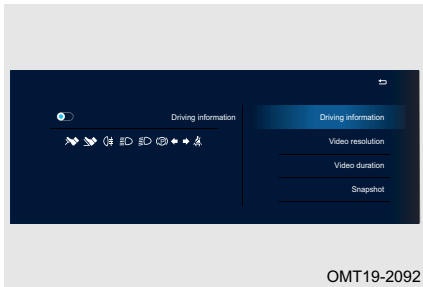
In the video file list screen, long press a video, a small circle will appear in the top right corner of the video thumbnail, with "✓" indicating that the video is selected, multiple or single choice is allowed, click Delete to delete the selected video. Deleted video is not recoverable.

During video recording, when the overlay switch of driving information is ON, you can see the date, time and driving status when recording this video in the information bar of video playback screen.

### ⚠ CAUTION

In the process of deleting videos or photos, do not unplug TF card or cut power off to avoid damaging TF card.

## Setting



You can enter the setting menu screen of the driving recorder by clicking the setting soft button. The setting items of the driving recorder include the following contents:

Driving information overlay: ON (default)/OFF.

Recording resolution: 1080P (- default), 720P.

Recording time: 1 minute, 3 minutes (default), 5 minutes.

Snapshot: Take photo, record a video, take photo + record a video (default).

Vibration sensitivity: High, middle (default), low.

Wide dynamic: ON (default)/OFF.

Parking monitoring: ON (default)/OFF.

Recorder memory card: Display TF card capacity, and format the TF card.



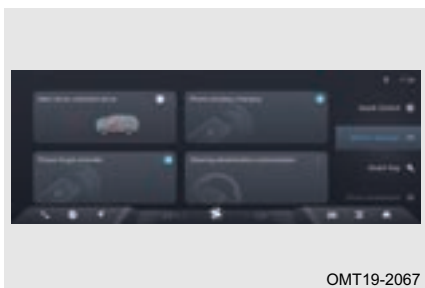
 READ

In the process of formatting the TF card and upgrading the software, do not unplug the card or cut power off to avoid damaging the memory card or recorder.

## 4-8. Wireless Charging

## Wireless Charging

Wireless charging uses electromagnetic induction technology conveniently and safely to allow for a better experience while driving.

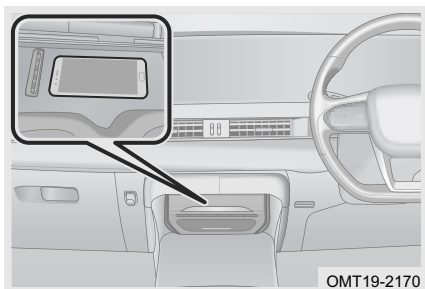


OMT19-2067

Turn vehicle power to ON mode.  
Turn on Wireless Charging through Audio System - Interior.

Note: Phone forgetting reminder function will also be enabled when wireless charging function is turned on.

## Usage methods



OMT19-2170

While vehicle power is switched to ON mode, the wireless charging starts to work after putting the mobile phone in wireless charging sensing area, and the audio head unit displays "📶"; the audio head unit displays "📶" after charging is completed.

- In the following conditions, the wireless charging may not work properly:
  1. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of phone is more than 8mm away from wireless charging sensing area.
  2. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone has thick metal (such as coin, metal mobile phone shell), and audio head unit displays "📶".
  3. When the surface temperature of wireless charging sensing area is more than 65°C due to sun exposure, the wireless charging module will trigger self-protection and the mobile phone cannot be charged.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### READ

- Wireless charging function only supports mobile phones with wireless charging function.
- Please put the mobile phone in the center of the mobile phone slot. If you accelerate, decelerate or turn sharply during driving, the mobile phone will shake, which may affect the charging efficiency and stability.

### CAUTION

- In the process of normal use of the vehicle, there will be a temporary charging shielding, so that vehicle may identify the smart key.
- If your mobile phone does not support the wireless charging function, it is recommended that do not use the wireless charging patch. The quality of the wireless charging patch in the market is uneven, and damage may be caused if using frequently (such as function failure, poor interface contact, metal foreign object recognition failure).

### Phone forgetting reminder function



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on Forgetting Reminder through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings.

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, and driver door is open, if mobile phone is left in wireless charging sensing area, alarm will sound, if it is taken out, the alarm stops.

## 4-9. Storage Space

### Storage Space

#### Door storage boxes

Storage boxes on front and the second row doors can be used for storing maps, cups and others items.

#### Glove box

Glove box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

### WARNING

Before driving, make sure that the glove box is closed in place. Otherwise in case of emergency braking or emergency steering, it may cause accidents and serious injury or even death.

### Armrest box on auxiliary fascia console

Armrest box on auxiliary fascia console is used to store maps, instructions and other items.

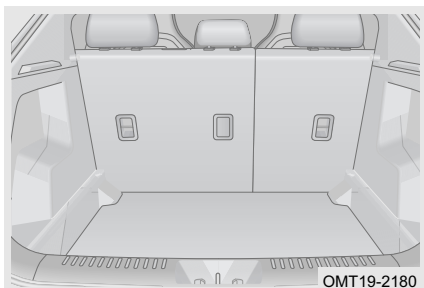
#### WARNING

- Adults or children are not allowed to sit on the armrest box on auxiliary fascia console.
- Armrest box on auxiliary fascia console must be closed when the vehicle is running, and the opening armrest box on auxiliary fascia console may hinder the driver's arm movement to prevent injury.

### Seat storage bag

Front seatbacks are both equipped with storage bags on backside, which are used to store documents, instruction etc.

### Luggage compartment



To enlarge space for stowing luggage, the rear seats can be folded when no passenger is in rear seats.

■ When stowing luggage in the vehicle, observe the following precautions:

1. Be careful to keep the vehicle balanced.
2. For better endurance mileage, do not stow unneeded items.
3. Make sure that the stowing items are not oversize to prevent the boot door from closing properly.

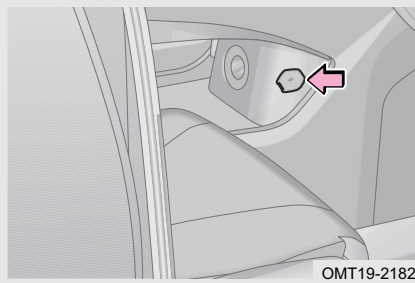
#### WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle with the boot door open or not closed, to prevent items from being thrown out to cause personal injury.
- Do not allow anyone to sit in the luggage compartment. The passengers should sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they may be seriously injured in event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Do not stack goods or luggage higher than seatback. Keep them low, as close to the floor as possible to prevent them sliding forward in event of braking, causing personal injury.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### 4-10. Power Outlet

#### Front Power Outlet



Front power outlet is located on the front end of auxiliary fascia console.

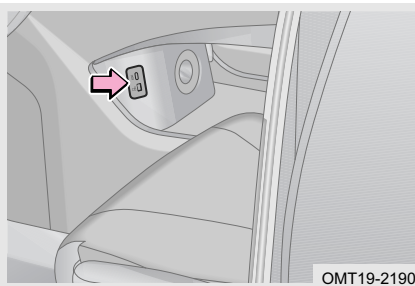
Power outlet can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

#### CAUTION

- To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use electrical equipment with high power (120W or more).
- To prevent the battery from depleting, do not use the power outlet longer than necessary.
- Do not insert anything or allow any liquid to get into the outlet other than an appropriate plug, as this may cause electrical failure or short circuits.

### 4-11. USB Port

#### Front USB Port

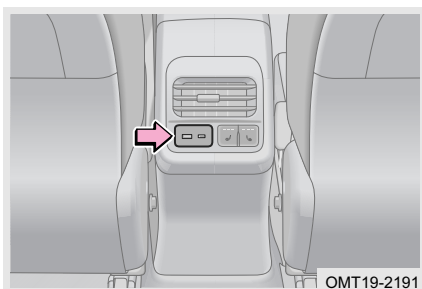


Front USB port is located on the front end of auxiliary fascia console (as shown in the illustration).

Type-A port: It can be used for reading U disc, phone connect and charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

## Rear USB Port



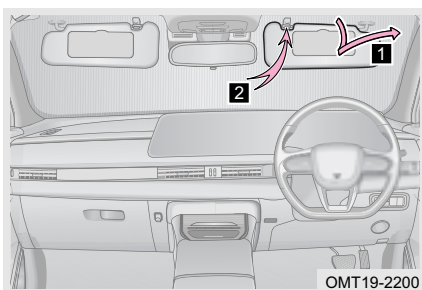
Rear USB port is located under the rear air outlet of center armrest box.

Type-A port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

## 4-12. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

## Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

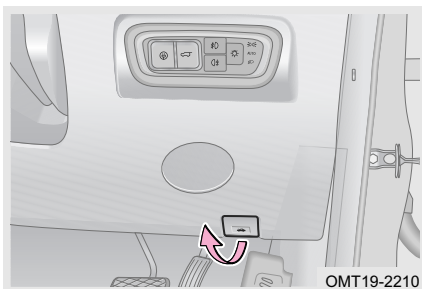


Horizontally move the vanity mirror sliding plate to use the vanity mirror. For vehicle equipped with vanity mirror light, the corresponding vanity mirror light will come on when moving the vanity mirror sliding plate.

- 1** Flip the sun visor down.
- 2** Detach the hook and turn it outward to shade the sidelight.

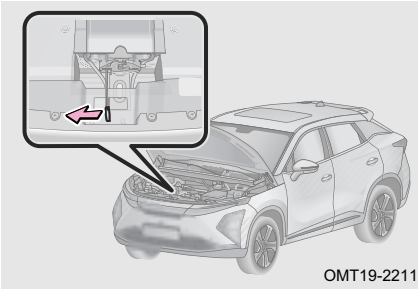
## 4-13. Front Compartment Cover

## Opening/Closing Front Compartment Cover



Step 1: The front compartment cover will pop up slightly when the front compartment cover release lever is pulled;

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION



Step 2: Reach your hand to the center part of the front of the front compartment cover, and contact with the auxiliary catch lever. Then push it to left and keep it in this position, and lift the front compartment cover at the same time;

Step 3: Lower the front compartment cover and close it until the latch is locked;

Step 4: After closing the front compartment cover, lift the front compartment cover lightly to check that front compartment cover is fully closed.

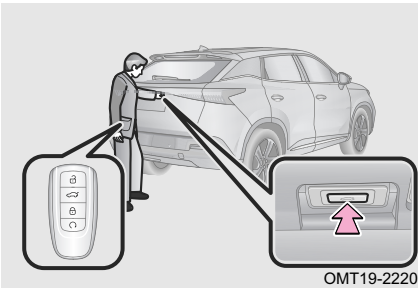
### CAUTION

- Before closing the front compartment cover, check if you have not left any tools, rags etc. in the front compartment.
- When closing the front compartment cover, do not press it by hand, otherwise it may be deformed.
- Make sure that front compartment cover is closed before driving, otherwise accidents and personal injury may be caused.

## 4-14. Boot door

### Manual Boot door

#### Opening/closing boot door

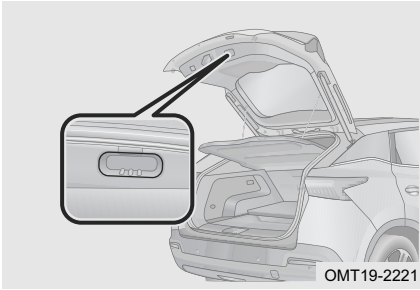


Method 1: With central lock unlocked, approach the back of vehicle, press exterior switch on the boot door and lift up to open the boot door.

Method 2: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, press boot door exterior switch and lift up to open boot door.

### READ

When the vehicle power is turned to ACC/ON mode and the central control lock is locked, please unlock the central control lock first, and then open it with boot door exterior switch.



Pull the boot door assist handle down and release it before the boot door is fully closed. Make sure it is fully closed before leaving the vehicle.

### WARNING

Make sure that the boot door is closed before driving, otherwise, accidents and damage to related parts may be caused.

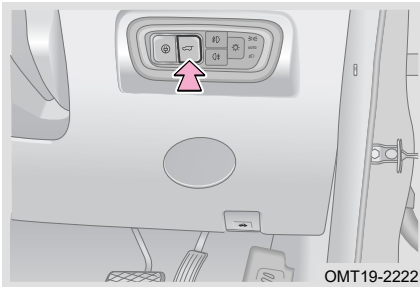
## Power Boot Door


For your convenience, power boot door can be opened/closed in various ways (such as using driver side switch, boot door exterior switch, boot door interior switch, smart key remote control, smart key sensing opening, voice, remote open/close boot door , the height adjustment function can also be achieved, let you fully feel the convenience of power boot door.


### Smart key remote control

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, long press boot door opener button on smart key and power Boot door will be open/closed.

### Driver door switch

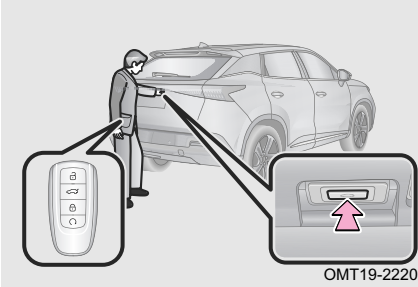


With central control lock unlocked, long press "  " button, indicator signal lights will come on and power boot door will be opened/ closed.

When the power boot door is moving, press "  " button to suspend the action.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### Boot door exterior switch



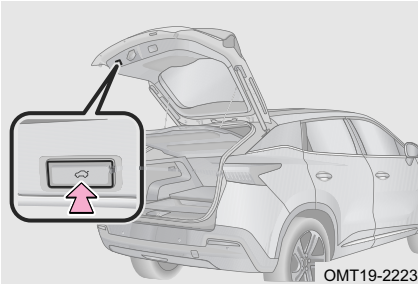
Method 1: With central control lock unlocked, approach the back of vehicle and press exterior switch on the boot door, indicator signal lights will come on and power boot door will be opened/closed.


Method 2: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle while carrying smart key on your person and press boot door exterior switch, indicator signal lights will come on and power boot door will be opened/closed.


#### READ

When the vehicle power is turned to ACC/ON mode and the central control lock is locked, please unlock the central control lock first, and then open it with boot door exterior switch.

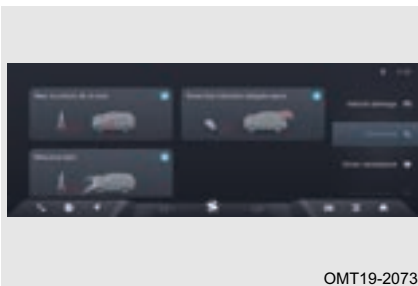
### Boot door interior switch



With the power boot door open, press "  " button to close the power boot door.

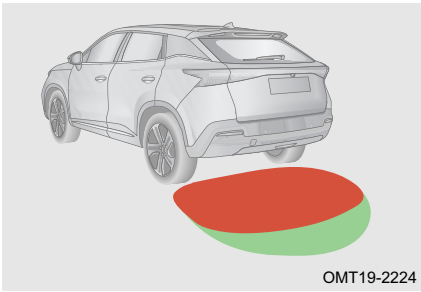
When the power boot door is moving, press "  " button to suspend the action.

### Smart key sensing



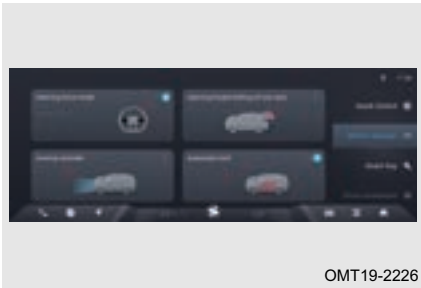
Turn vehicle power to ON mode. Turn on Smart Key Sensing Boot Door through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings - Smart Key.



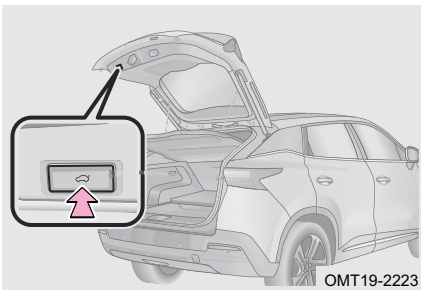


While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode or vehicle is started remotely, close the four doors, approach to the rear of vehicle (red area) while carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key, after indicator signal lights come on, take a step back (- green area), power boot door opens.

### Boot door height setting



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, set the Boot Door Opening Height through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings.



After the power boot door is opened, adjust it to your desire height; long press "🚗" button until the vehicle gives a light prompt, and the power boot door opening height is set successfully.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System".
- For details about remote boot door control, refer to "Remote Control System".
- If the boot door opening height is too low or too high, the boot door opening height cannot be set.
- Smart key sensing boot door open function is turned off after 3 days since vehicle is locked, restarting the vehicle will resume the function.
- Do not put smart key next to computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc. failure to do so may cause the power boot door being unable to sense opening/closing.
- When any switch (such as power boot door switch, power boot door button, boot door open button) is activated during the movement of the power boot door, the boot door will stop moving.
- Heavy rain, heavy snow, high-pressure car washing, serious dirt on the rear bumper and traction device at the rear of vehicle may decrease the sensitivity of kick sensor, which is normal.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- When abnormality occurs in power boot door, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the power boot door opens, do not pull electric support rod laterally, which may cause damage to related parts.
- Before driving, make sure that the boot door is closed properly, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- Before opening the power boot door, be sure to note that there should be nothing in the opening range, which could result in scratching the boot door.
- When closing the boot door, make sure that nobody will be caught. If closing is interrupted, close it again.
- When the power boot door is opened to the highest position, it cannot be pushed or supported by hand to higher place, as this may cause damage to related parts.
- When closing power boot door by hand, please operate gently. Never operate with brute force, failure to do so may cause damage to motor and module.
- When going uphill or downhill, due to change in the center of gravity, the power boot door may not open or close. This is normal. Open or close it by hand.
- If the battery cable is disconnected and reconnected, the power boot door needs to be manually closed to locked position at a constant speed, and then press the power boot door switch to open/close the power boot door normally.

**⚠ WARNING**

Make sure that the boot door is closed before driving, otherwise, accidents and damage to related parts may be caused.

**Power boot door jam protection function**

**PPositive jam protection:** When power boot door is opening, if it encounters resistance (such as wall, obstacle), the boot door positive jam protection works to avoid vehicle damage.

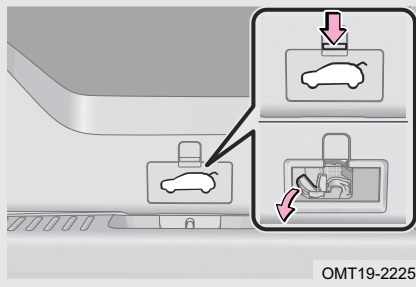
**Reverse jam protection:** When power boot door is closing, if it encounters resistance (such as children, luggage), the boot door reverse jam protection works to avoid child injury and vehicle damage.

**⚠ WARNING**

Although the power boot door is equipped with jam protection function, do not activate jam protection function on purpose to avoid accidental injury.

## 4. INTERIOR FUNCTION

### Boot Door Emergency Opening



Boot door cannot be opened when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, open the boot door with boot door emergency device switch (stop the vehicle as safely as possible if condition permits).

Step 1: Fold the rear seatback;

Step 2: Get in the rear of vehicle and open emergency device cover;

Step 3: Press down the emergency device switch (white) with hand, release it, and then push the boot door to open it.

|  |     |   |     |
|--|-----|---|-----|
| 5-1. Vehicle Power-on and Power-off      |     | 5-4. Steering System                      |     |
| Vehicle Power-on .....                   | 138 | Electric Power Steering System (EPS)..... | 143 |
| Vehicle Power-off .....                  | 138 | 5-5. Brake System                         |     |
| 5-2. Driving Operation                   |     | Electric Parking Brake System (EPB).....  | 144 |
| Before Starting Vehicle.....             | 139 | Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD).....         | 146 |
| 5-3. Gear Position                       |     | Foot Brake .....                          | 147 |
| Gear Shifting .....                      | 139 | 5-6. Airbag                               |     |
| Column Shift Switch .....                | 140 | Airbag .....                              | 148 |
| Driving Mode .....                       | 141 |   |     |
| Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound ..... | 143 |   |     |

## 5. DRIVING VEHICLE

### 5-1. Vehicle Power-on and Power-off

#### Vehicle Power-on

The driver unlocks the vehicle with the smart key, opens the driver side door, and the vehicle is automatically powered on.

When the vehicle is powered off, place the key inside the vehicle, depress the brake pedal and the vehicle is automatically powered on.

#### READ

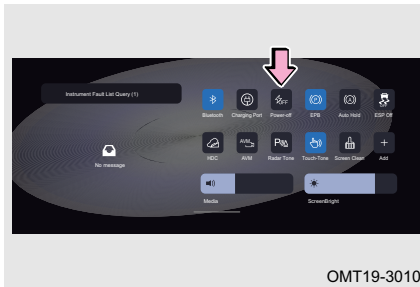
The vehicle is equipped with an alcohol lock, which needs to be installed at after-sales authorized service centre.

#### Vehicle Power-off

##### Normal power-off

When the vehicle has been powered on or in READY state, if the driver seat is not occupied and all doors (including front compartment cover and luggage compartment) are in closed condition, Lock the vehicle with smart key.

##### Emergency power-off



Emergency power-off is possible either with the driver seat occupied or with the doors open.

When the vehicle is in disabled condition, long press the power switch for 5s to power off directly.

##### Automatic power-off

After the vehicle is unlocked, the vehicle is parked and all doors, front compartment cover, and luggage compartment are closed, the vehicle is actively powered off after 30 minutes without any operation.

## 5-2. Driving Operation

### Before Starting Vehicle

#### Inspection before driving

Before driving, pay attention to the following every time:

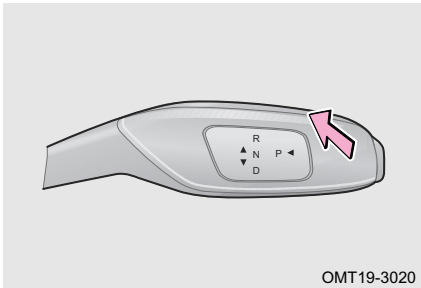
- Check around the vehicle before getting in;
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle;
- Adjust angle of the inside and outside rear view mirrors;
- Fasten the seat belts;
- Check that the vehicle is parked and in P position;
- Ensure that the tyres and tyre pressure are normal;
- Power on the vehicle, and check if malfunction indicator and other indicators on instrument cluster are normal. If it is abnormal, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

#### Starting vehicle

1. Carry the key and get into the vehicle.
2. Depress the brake pedal and shift the gear position to R or D position to start the vehicle.

## 5-3. Gear Position

### Gear Shifting



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to ON mode, depress the brake pedal, push down the column shift switch to bottom, and shift the shift lever to D;

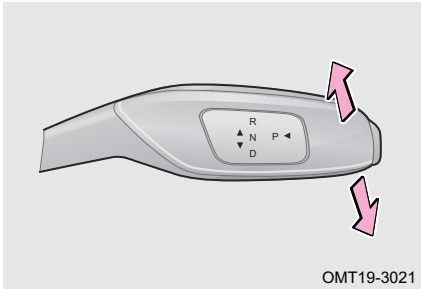
Step 2: Release the parking brake manually or automatically and release the brake pedal. then drive the vehicle slowly.

#### WARNING

- Never tow the vehicle for a long distance or at high speed. Raise drive wheels or disconnect propeller shaft when towing.
- When shift lever is in N, make sure parking brake is applied or brake pedal is depressed, otherwise an accident may occur.

## 5. DRIVING VEHICLE

### Column Shift Switch



Turn vehicle power to ON mode:

**P gear:** When the vehicle is stationary, depress the brake pedal and the shift lever is not in P. Press the button on the right side of column shift switch to shift the shift lever to P.

**R gear:** When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move up to the top and shift the shift lever to R.

**D gear:** When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move down to the bottom and shift the shift lever to D.

**N gear:** When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal and shift the shift lever to N by following operations.

1. When the gear position is in D/P, push up column shift once to shift to N.
2. When the gear position is in R, push down column shift once to shift to N.

#### **Gear position introduction**

| Gear Position | Function  |
|---------------|---|
| P gear        | Park position. Drive wheels are mechanically locked. The vehicle can be started.  |
| R gear        | Reverse position. Back-up lights will come on and parking assist system will operate.                                     |
| N gear        | Neutral position. It is used for short time idling stop.  |
| D gear        | Forward driving position. Automatically shifts up and down among forward drive gears according to load and vehicle speed. |

#### **READ**

The selected gear position will display the corresponding gear position on the instrument cluster. To avoid accidental vehicle movement, confirm the gear position before depressing accelerator pedal to start.

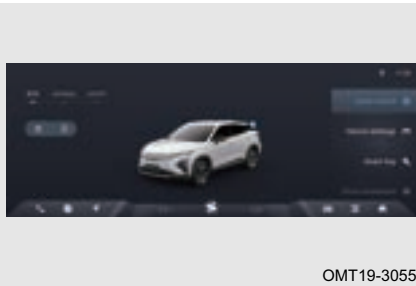


### CAUTION

- Do not shift the shift lever out of R while the vehicle is moving backward. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged seriously.
- Never shift in P position when the vehicle is not stopped steadily. This may lead to abnormal sound or damage to the vehicle.
- When the vehicle stalls, do not coast vehicle in N. Otherwise, the vehicle will be damaged.
- It is necessary to depress the brake pedal first to stop the vehicle steadily, and then perform gear position switching. Otherwise shifting mechanism will be damaged.
- When vehicle malfunctions occur due to insufficient battery, even depress brake pedal, gear position switching is impossible. Please contact a authorized service centre immediately for inspection and repair.
- When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the parking brake must be applied first, and then shift the shift lever to P. After starting on a slope, shift the shift lever out of P, then release parking brake for driving.

### Driving Mode

#### Driving mode (method 1)



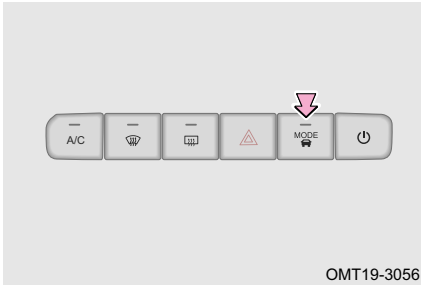
Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and the vehicle is stationary or safe to drive. Manually select driving mode through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Quick Control; And the corresponding mode icon on instrument cluster will turn on and accompanied by voice reminder to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.

### READ

The driving mode memory can be turned on/off through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings.

## 5. DRIVING VEHICLE

### Driving mode (method 2)



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and the vehicle is stationary or safe to drive. Click mode button; And the corresponding mode icon on instrument cluster will turn on and accompanied by voice reminder to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.

### Driving mode introduction

| Driving Mode           | Function  |
|------------------------|---|
| NORMAL (standard mode) | Combine vehicle power and economy, which is suitable for all kinds of roads.  |
| ECO (economic mode)    | The economic mode controls the speed of the drive motor with a reasonable gear to reduce unnecessary power consumption.                                       |
| SPORT (sport mode)     | Improve vehicle power and realizes higher response speed and driving experience. It is suitable for wide and flat roads with few vehicles (such as motorway). |

#### READ

Economic mode corresponding to adaptive cruise control system accelerates gently, and sport mode corresponding to adaptive cruise control system accelerates faster.

### Energy recovery

The energy recovery function converts part of the vehicle's kinetic energy into electrical energy when the vehicle is coasting or braking, so as to charge the power battery and increase the driving mileage.

#### Coasting energy recovery

The accelerator pedal and brake pedal are in released condition and the vehicle can recovery energy during coasting.

#### Braking energy recovery

Driver depresses the brake pedal to recover the braking energy.

#### Factors affecting energy recovery braking

The amount of energy fed back to power battery through energy recovery braking depends on the following factors:

- Power level and temperature of power battery.
- Energy recovery level.

#### CAUTION

Deceleration through energy recovery braking is not a substitute for the braking required to ensure safety, and the driver should apply braking in time according to the actual situation.

#### Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound

Because the noise of electric vehicles is relatively low when driving at low speed, it is difficult for pedestrians nearby to perceive it. In order to improve driving safety, this function can send alarm sound when the vehicle speed is less than 18 mph (30 km/h) to remind pedestrians nearby to perceive it.

- When the vehicle is driving with vehicle speed below 18 mph (30 km/h), the warning sound will increase with the increase of the vehicle speed.
- When the vehicle is not in Park (P) and is stationary, the system also can send warning sound.

### 5-4. Steering System

#### Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

EPS uses torque generated by motor as power source of steering system, instead of assisting method using in general vehicle, that is, hydraulic pump is driven by drive motor.

#### CAUTION

- Frequent handling and rotation of steering wheel over long periods of time may damage the mechanism in EPS.
- It is forbidden to turn the steering wheel left and right frequently and quickly at idle speed to prevent the system from overheating. If the system is overheating, heavy steering will occur, which is normal. Stop rotating the steering wheel and switch the vehicle power to OFF/ACC mode until the system cools down.

#### Electric Power Steering System (EPS) indicator

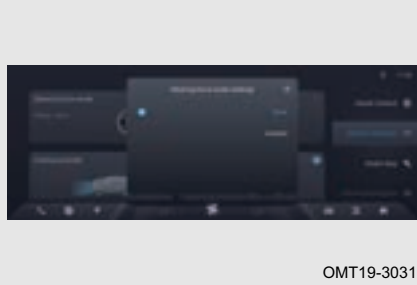
When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

#### WARNING

After EPS is disabled, although the vehicle still has the conventional steering capability, it should be driven with caution. At this time, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

## 5. DRIVING VEHICLE

### Steering power mode



Electric Power Steering System (EPS) is equipped with two steering power modes ((Sport/Comfort). The default steering power mode is comfort mode when the vehicle first works. Compared with the comfortable mode, steering power of sport mode is reduced.

#### READ

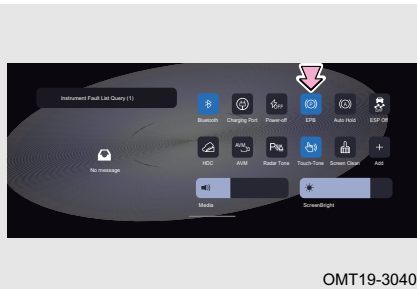
The steering power mode can be correlated with the driving mode. After the correlation, the steering mode corresponding to Standard (standard mode)/ECO (economic mode) of vehicle is comfort mode, while the steering mode corresponding to SPORT (sport mode) of vehicle is sport mode. After disassociation, steering power can be set to COMFORT/SPORT separately.

### 5-5. Brake System

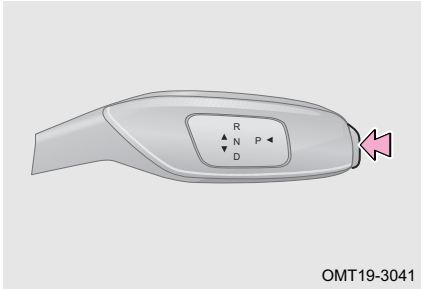
#### Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)

EPB system is a technology that integrates temporary braking during driving and long-time braking after stopping, implements parking brake by electronic control. This technology replaces the traditional hand-brake.

#### Usage methods



With vehicle powered on, perform downward sliding operation on the head unit screen, press EPB switch, and "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that parking brake function has been turned on. Press this switch again, "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster will go off, indicating that parking brake has been released.



Depress brake pedal, and park the vehicle smoothly. When the vehicle is stationary, press P button to switch the gear position to P to activate the parking brake function.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- When enabling and releasing electric parking brake, "whooshing" sound may be heard from rear part of vehicle. This is the working sound emitted by parking brake and is normal.
- While depressing brake pedal for releasing or applying parking brake, brake pedal may push slightly up or down, just depress the brake tightly.
- If vehicle coasts after stopping within a short period, system will increase parking force automatically to hold it for safety. When brake force increasing, system makes operation sound. This is normal.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- To avoid accidental vehicle movement, in auto hold state, confirm shift position before depressing accelerator pedal to start off.
- To avoid accidental vehicle movement, when stopping or leaving the vehicle, after EPB system is operating, "(P)" red indicator on instrument cluster and electric parking brake button indicator goes off after they come on for a certain time, check if "(P)" red indicator on instrument cluster and electric parking brake button indicator come on to ensure that electric parking brake is properly applied.

#### Emergency braking function

When the vehicle speed is 5 mph (8km/h) or less, short press or long press P button to apply braking slowly.

When the vehicle speed is more than 5 mph (8km/h), long press P button to apply dynamic braking.

## 5. DRIVING VEHICLE

### WARNING

- When emergency braking function is activated, it will drone. This is normal.
- When applying emergency braking, electric parking brake will apply brake at constant deceleration which is deviated from driver's desired deceleration and braking distance will be different.
- Use this function cautiously during normal driving. When driving, passengers should not touch button accidentally. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
- Emergency braking function can only be used in case of emergency such as foot brake failure or brake pedal stuck. ESP and its components cannot exceed road adhesion physical limit. Use of the emergency braking function on windy roads, dangerous roads, in heavy traffic or severe weather, may lead to drifting, side slipping or pulling, so please be careful.

### Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD)

AUTO HOLD is used to prevent vehicle from rolling when vehicle is stationary and starts off.

#### Usage methods



#### ■ Auto hold operation conditions

The vehicle is started, driver door is closed properly and driver seat belt is fastened.

#### ■ Turning on auto hold

When auto hold conditions are met, press auto hold button, indicator on button remains on, indicating that auto hold function has been turned on, and white indicator "Ⓐ" on instrument cluster remains on.

#### ■ Activating auto hold

When auto hold function is turned on, depress brake pedal, vehicle is in D gear and changes to stationary state from movement, auto hold function is activated and "Ⓐ" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Depress brake pedal when vehicle is stationary, and the auto hold function is turned on at the same time and the condition of auto hold is met, then auto hold function is activated, "Ⓐ" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

#### ■ Turning off auto hold

When auto hold function is turned on, press auto hold button to turn off auto hold function. The indicator on the auto hold button turns off, white indicator "

"(A)" on instrument cluster turns off to indicate that the vehicle has exited the auto hold function.

When auto hold function is activated, press auto hold button to turn off auto hold function, "(A)" green indicator on instrument cluster and indicator on auto hold button turn off, indicating that vehicle has exited auto hold function and switched to parking brake function.

#### ■ Auto hold release function

Way to release auto hold is the same as that of electric parking brake, including manual release and automatic release.

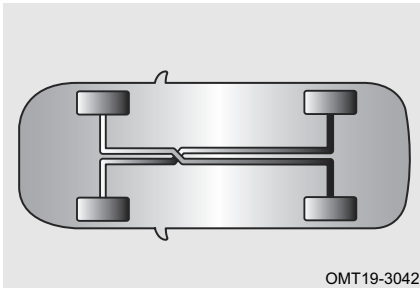
#### ⚠ CAUTION

- The auto hold function can only be activated when vehicle is in D gear and cannot be activated when vehicle is in R gear.
- Turn off auto hold function before driving into car wash.
- Always park vehicle correctly according to safety regulations and take care to avoid hurt yourself and pedestrians.
- If accelerator pedal is depressed very slowly, auto release of auto hold delays. This is normal.
- When auto hold function is activated, open driver side door or unfasten driver side seat belt, auto hold will switch to electrical parking.
- When auto hold function is enabled, open driver side door or unfasten driver side seat belt to exit auto hold function, close the door or fasten the belt again to activate the function again.

#### ⚠ WARNING

To avoid vehicle accidentally moving, in the state of auto hold, confirm the shift position before you depressing accelerator pedal to start.

### Foot Brake



The brake system adopts X type arrangement, double circuit brake system; The system is a hydraulic system with two independent subsystems. If one of the subsystems fails, the other system can still perform brake function. However, brake pedal depressing force will be greater than usual as well as the braking distance, and the brake system malfunction indicator remains on.

## 5. DRIVING VEHICLE

### WARNING

Do not drive vehicle under conditions in which only one brake system works. Please contact authorized service centre as soon as possible.

### **Brake system indicator**

When there is a fault, "" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

### WARNING

When there is a fault in brake system, check the brake fluid level, add brake fluid when the level is lower than MIN line. If reason is unclear, please contact authorized service centre immediately.

### **Precautions for brake system**

1. If there is continuous shudder or vibration being transferred to the steering wheel during braking, please contact authorized service centre immediately for inspection and repair.
2. When driving downhill, shift to a low gear to make full use of braking effect and avoid continuous use of brakes. Failure to do so may cause the brakes to overheat and braking distance will become longer, and the brakes may even temporarily lose its effectiveness in a serious case.
3. The brake system will make some noises sometimes during operation, which is normal, but if you hear metal friction or a whistling sounds over a period of time, the brake linings may be seriously worn, and you must contact a authorized service centre for replacement.
4. The new brake linings must break-in to reach optimal brake effect. Braking effect in the first 124 mile (200 km) is not optimal. In this case, depress brake pedal more firmly to compensate braking effect.
5. A wet brake may cause abnormal vehicle deceleration or pulling to one side when braking. Depress brake pedal slightly to test effectiveness of brakes. After driving through deep water, keep a safe vehicle speed and depress brake pedal slightly until braking function is restored.
6. Wear condition of brake lining depends largely on its working conditions and driving style. For vehicles mainly used in city traffic, frequent starting and stopping will make working condition of brake lining worsen. Therefore, please go to authorized service centre according to specified maintenance mileage to check thickness of brake linings or replace it as needed.

## 5-6. Airbag

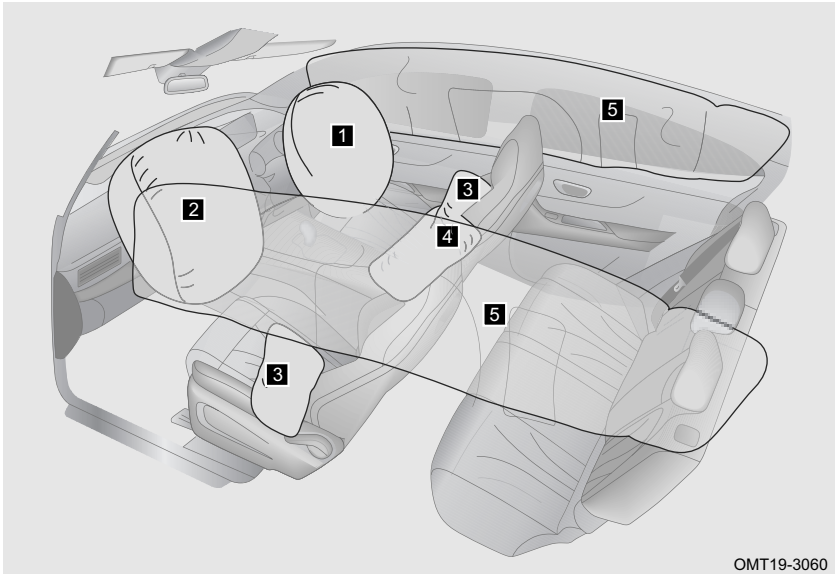
### Airbag

In severe frontal/side collision the SRS airbags deploy and work together with seat belts to protect occupants in vehicle. SRS airbags can distribute impact



force more evenly to upper parts of occupants' body, so their body move slowly even stop, thus reducing the risk of passenger and driver injury. Once an SRS airbag is deployed, doors will automatically unlock, interior lights will illuminate and hazard lights will illuminate.

### Location of SRS Airbags



- 1** Driver airbag
- 2** Front passenger airbag
- 3** Front side airbags (if equipped)
- 4** Front middle airbag (if equipped)
- 5** Curtain shield airbags (if equipped)

### Using SRS airbags correctly

#### ■ Driver airbag / front passenger airbag

In an event of a severe frontal collision and the airbag deployment conditions are met, both driver airbag and front passenger airbag work together with seat belts to help reduce injuries to the head or chest of driver and front passenger caused by hitting the interior component. (For models equipped with front passenger airbag switch, the front passenger airbag does not deploy when the switch is off).

#### ■ Front side airbags (if equipped)

In an event of a severe side collision and the airbag deployment conditions are met, front side airbags can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants.

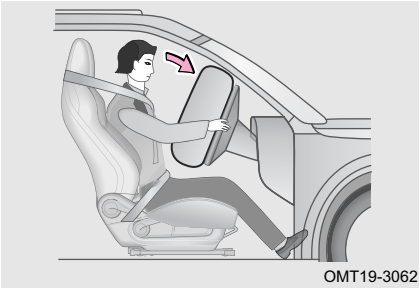
## 5. DRIVING VEHICLE

### ■ Curtain shield airbags (if equipped)

In an event of a severe side collision and the airbag deployment conditions are met, curtain shield airbags can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats.

### ■ Front middle airbag (if equipped)

In an event of a severe side collision and the airbag deployment conditions are met, curtain shield airbags can help protect primarily the head of driver and front passenger.



The SRS airbag works together with seat belt to protect safety of driver and passengers. However, airbag is not a substitute for seat belt. In addition, the SRS airbag will deploy only when the collision degree of vehicle reaches the design condition. In some collisions, seat belts are the only protective device. Wearing a seat belt during a collision can help reduce the risk of hitting objects inside the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle, and effectively protect the drivers and passengers. Therefore all people in vehicle should wear seat belts correctly. SRS airbags and seat belts can provide protection only for adults but are not designed to protect infants and young children.

The SRS airbag will generate considerable force at the moment of deployment. In order to avoid injury caused by deployment of the SRS airbag, the driver and occupants must adopt the correct sitting posture, correctly wear the seat belt and adjust their seat position, never get too close to the SRS airbag, such as sitting on the edge of the seat or tilting the body forward. For vehicles equipped with front side airbag (if equipped) and curtain shield airbag (if equipped), make sure that the arms are sufficiently away from the vehicle side to avoid injury during deploying.

 CAUTION


- The SRS airbag cannot protect the lower part of the occupant's body.
- The SRS airbag will quickly contract after deploying, which can ensure that forward vision of driver is not blocked.
- The related parts of SRS airbag will generate heat after deploying. Do not touch the related parts of SRS airbag immediately to avoid injury.
- The SRS airbag is a non-reusable device. Once the SRS airbag is deployed, the related parts of SRS airbag must be replaced.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel and instrument panel are damaged or cracked, please go to authorized service centre for replacement as soon as possible.
- The deployment and contraction of the SRS airbag is completed in a short period of time, and cannot protect against the impact of a second impact that may occur subsequently.
- The SRS airbag is neither designed for rear collisions, slight frontal collisions, nor for vehicle rolling over, and it does not work when the vehicle is braked in an emergency.
- The SRS airbags release some smoke and dust after deploying. For people with asthma or other respiratory problems, respiratory system could be stimulated. Therefore, all people in vehicle should get out as soon as possible, or open windows to breathe fresh air and seek medical treatment if necessary.

## 5. DRIVING VEHICLE

### WARNING

- The seat cover should not block front side airbags (if equipped) and front middle airbag (if equipped) during using, as in the event of an accident, the front side airbags (if equipped) and front middle airbag (if equipped) will not pop up after inflating, which will reduce protection for passengers.
- A soft, dry cloth or cloth dampened with water must be used to clean the SRS airbag. In order to avoid any fluid into the SRS airbag, otherwise it may seriously affect the normal function of SRS airbag.
- If there is water in vehicle, the SRS airbag may be damaged. Even if there is no collision at this time, it may cause the airbag to deploy accidentally. Turn off the engine immediately and disconnect the negative battery cable. Do not try to start the engine. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.
- Make sure driver and front passenger always sit upright. Leaning into the path of front middle airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of injury.
- Do not attach accessories on or near the front middle airbag. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or hurt someone if airbag inflates.
- Do not open the lid of front center armrest box while driving.
- Do not cover or replace the driver's seatback cover without consulting authorized service centre. Improperly replacing or covering driver's seatback cover can prevent front middle airbag from properly deploying during a side impact.

### **SRS airbag indicators**

The " " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on when it is malfunctioning, which is used to alert the driver that SRS airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

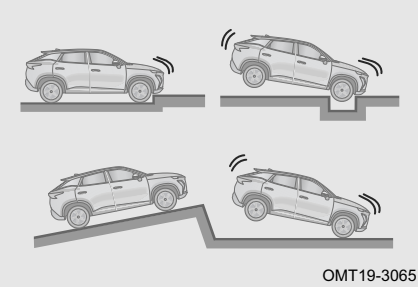
### **SRS airbag operating conditions**

Deployment conditions of the SRS airbag do not depend on driving speed of vehicle, but depend on the object, collision direction and vehicle speed. SRS airbags may not deploy when the impact of collision is absorbed or dispersed into the body; However, the SRS airbag can sometimes operate depending on the impact condition in an accident. Therefore, deployment conditions of the SRS airbag should not be judged according to the damaged condition of the vehicle.

Even if the SRS airbag is not deployed, a collision may damage the SRS airbag in the vehicle. SRS airbags may not operate properly if damaged, and therefore will not be able to protect you and other passengers in the event of another collision, which may result in accidents and personal injuries. In order to ensure that the SRS airbag can deploy properly in an event of collision,

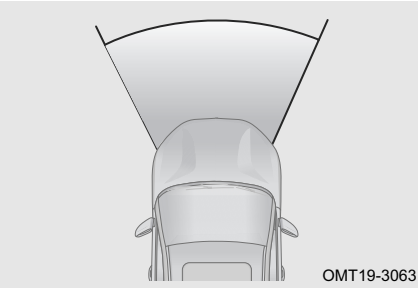
please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

■ Conditions under which SRS airbag may deploy other than a collision

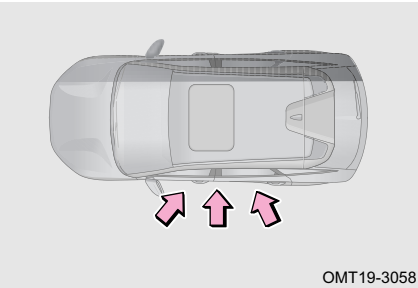


The driver airbag, front passenger airbag, front side airbags, curtain shield airbags and front middle airbag may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.

■ Conditions under which SRS airbag may deploy in a collision



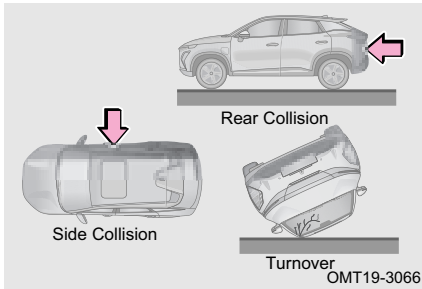
In general, in an event of frontal collision, the driver airbag and front passenger airbag will deploy if the deceleration of vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.



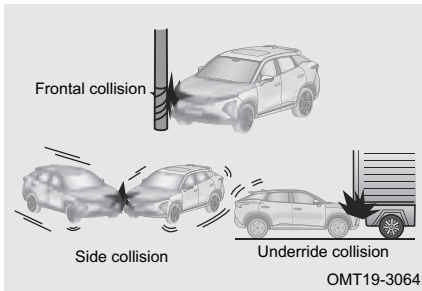
The vehicle is subjected to a strong side impact, and the side collision sensors detect an impact severe enough to cause the front side airbags, curtain shield airbags, and front middle airbag to deploy.

## 5. DRIVING VEHICLE

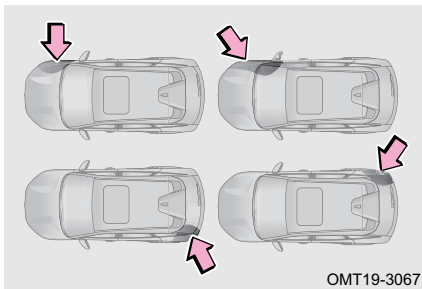
### ■ Conditions under which SRS airbag may not deploy during a collision



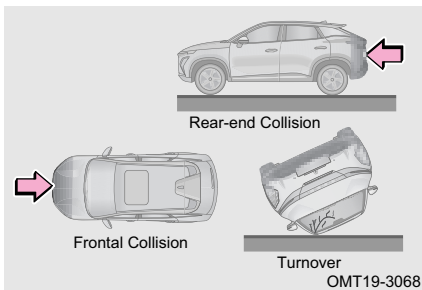
The driver airbag and front passenger airbag will usually not deploy if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.



The driver airbag and front passenger airbag may not deploy if the front of vehicle hits a telegraph pole, goes under a truck, or if the vehicle is involved in an sideways collision.



The front side airbag, curtain shield airbag and front middle airbag may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from side, the rear part of the rear tyre or a side collision at certain angles to the vehicle.

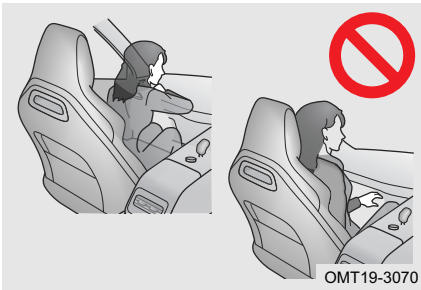


The front side airbag, curtain shield airbag and front middle airbag may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a front or rear collision, turnover or low speed side collision.

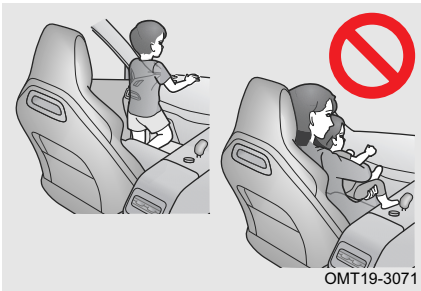
**Precautions for SRS airbag**



Always keep SRS airbag deployment path clear. It is forbidden to place anything (such as mobile phone) between the occupant and the SRS airbag and fix or place any objects on or near the SRS airbag cover; If there is an object between occupant and SRS airbag, the SRS airbag may not deploy according to design path, or the SRS airbag may push object to occupant's body, causing serious injury or even death.



Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



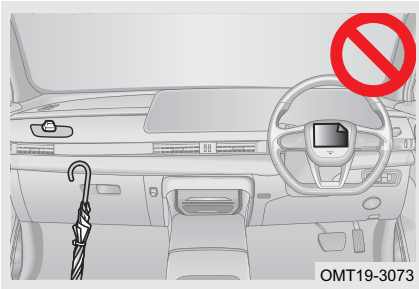
Do not allow a child to stand in front of the front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of front passenger.



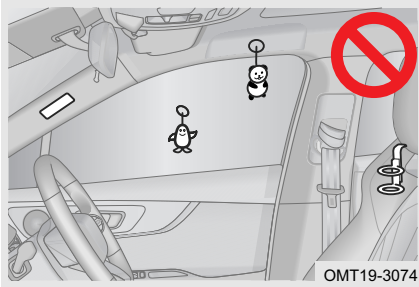
Do not lean against the door, A pillar, B pillar or C pillar.

Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their heads or hands outside the vehicle.

## 5. DRIVING VEHICLE



Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas such as the instrument panel, steering wheel and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when driver airbag or front passenger airbag deploys.



Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, A pillar, B pillar, C pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.

Do not strike or apply excessive force to the area of SRS airbag components. Otherwise, it may cause SRS airbag malfunction.

### Replacement of SRS airbag component

The related parts of the SRS airbag must be replaced 10 years from the date of vehicle purchase. In order to make sure that the SRS airbag can ensure your safety, please always go to authorized service centre to replace related parts of the SRS airbag within the specified time.

Make sure that the new owner knows the SRS airbag configuration and the replacement date of SRS airbag in this vehicle when the vehicle is sold.

### Modification and disposal of SRS airbag components

Do not dispose of the vehicle or operate the following components without permission of the authorized service centre, otherwise accidents and personal injuries may occur:

- Modification of vehicle suspension system.
- Modification of vehicle front bumper, etc.
- Modification of side doors or door protective panel and B-pillar protective panel, etc.
- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbags (SRS).
- Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument cluster, instrument panel and seats.



|  |  |     |
|--|--|-----|
| 6-1. Traffic Sign Recognition System   | Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/Front Collision Warning (FCW) System .... | 177 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System .....                                  |  | 159 |
| Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) .....  |  | 159 |
| 6-2. Speed Limit System  |  |     |
| Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System .....                                   |  | 161 |
| Speed Control Function (SCF) .....   |  | 166 |
| 6-3. Lane Assist System  |  |     |
| Lane Assist System .....   |  | 167 |
| Lane Departure Warning (LDW) .....   |  | 168 |
| Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) .....   |  | 169 |
| 6-4. Blind Spot Detection Assist System                                      |  |     |
| Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System .....                                      |  | 171 |
| Door Opening Warning (DOW) System .....                                      |  | 172 |
| Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System.....                                     |  | 173 |
| Rear Cross Traffic Alert (-RCTA) System.....                                 |  | 173 |
| Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB) System .....                                 |  | 173 |
| 6-5. Driving Safety Assist System  |  |     |
| Leaving Reminder System (DAI) .....  |  | 174 |
| Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) .....                                 |  | 175 |
| 6-6. Intelligent High Beam Assist System (HMA)                               |  |     |
| 6-7. Intelligent Cruise Control System                                       |  |     |
| Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System ..... |  | 181 |
| Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) .....                                     |  | 183 |
| 6-8. Parking Assist System   |  |     |
| Parking Radar Assist System .....  |  | 184 |
| Parking View Monitor System (RVC) (If Equipped) .....                        |  | 186 |
| Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM) (If Equipped) .....                      |  | 187 |
| 6-9. Driver Monitoring System  |  |     |
| Driver Monitoring System (DMS) .....   |  | 191 |
| 6-10. Braking Force Control System   |  |     |
| Integrated Braking Force Control System .....                                |  | 193 |
| Electronic Stability Control System (ESP).....                               |  | 193 |
| Secondary Collision Mitigation System (MCB) .....                            |  | 195 |

## ASSIST DRIVING

---

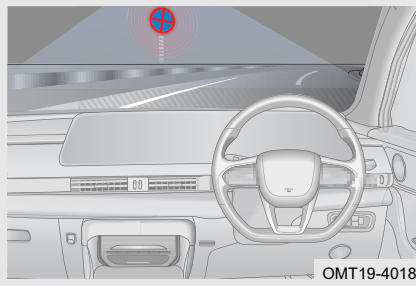
|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Hill Descent Control (HDC) System ..... | 195 |
| Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....      | 196 |
| Extended Function .....                 | 198 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 6-11. Data Privacy                                   |     |
| Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW) ..... | 199 |
| Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS) .....       | 200 |
| Emergency call (eCall) .....                         | 200 |

## 6-1. Traffic Sign Recognition System

### Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) system detects traffic sign information on the road ahead and displays it on instrument cluster, reminding driver to obey the local traffic rules.



When Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) system is turned on, the sign "ⓧ" indicating no temporary/long-term parking or the sign "Ⓟ" indicating no parking is recognized with the vehicle is in P gear for a period of time, instrument cluster issues an alarm sound and flashes the recognized sign for reminding driver to observe the local traffic rules.

#### READ

For some traffic signs, only instrument cluster flashes to remind, without alarm sound prompt.

#### Function limit

■ Traffic sign recognition system may not recognize in following conditions:

1. Faded signs.
2. Signs on curve.
3. Rotated or damaged signs.
4. High signs on highway.
5. Signs that is covered fully or partly, or that the position can not be found easily.
6. Signs covered by frost, snow, dust fully or partly.

#### WARNING

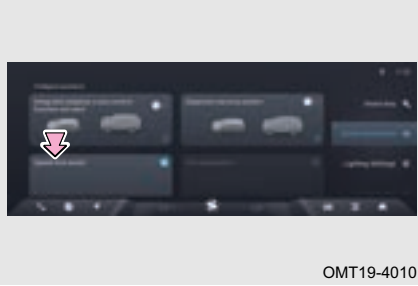
TSR based on the function of front view multi-function camera is affected by weather and light, so it is not suitable for all conditions.

### Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)

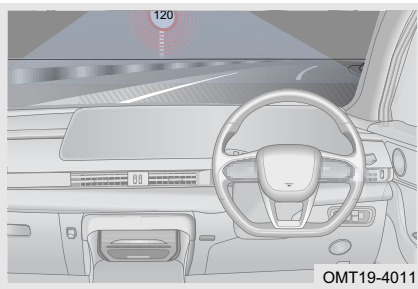
SLA detects speed limit sign information on road ahead and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, and use the final speed limit information to remind the driver to pay attention to the various

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

current road speed limit regulations in the form of image, sound, etc., to keep legal speed and observe local traffic laws.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on Speed Limit Assist through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Driver Assistanc.



After SLA detects speed limit sign information on road ahead and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, "120" indicator on instrument cluster remains on. If the speed exceeds the current speed limit, the driver will be alerted by flashing/sounding the speed limit icon.

### Function limit

■ Traffic sign recognition system may not recognize in following conditions:

1. Faded signs.
2. Signs on curve.
3. Rotated or damaged signs.
4. High signs on highway.
5. Signs that is covered fully or partly, or that the position can not be found easily.
6. Signs covered by frost, snow, dust fully or partly.

### ⚠ WARNING

- SLA based on camera function is affected by weather and light, so the function is not appropriate for all conditions.
- Speed limit assist system is only a driving assistance function and cannot completely replace driver's vision. Obstruced cameras or radar, incorrect or missing speed limit information on the map, difficult road conditions and bad weather may all prevent this feature from working properly. In any case, drivers should take the initiative to pay attention to their own speed and road speed limit, and control their driving speed.

## 6-2. Speed Limit System

### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System

ACC can maintain the speed set by driver and can also follow the vehicle at a set safe distance.

#### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system button



Main button "⊕":

Activate/exit function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, short press main button to activate/exit ACC;

Mode switching function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, or TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, long press the main button to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

Active speed limit button "LIM": Turn on/off ASL.

Following clearance increasing button "≡": Following clearance increasing adjustment.

Following clearance decreasing button "⊖": Following clearance decreasing adjustment.

"RES+" button: Resume the ACC and adjust speed value.

"SET-" button: Enter the ACC, set ASL and adjust speed value.

#### READ

RES+ and SET- are shared buttons for ACC and ASL.

#### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system activation conditions

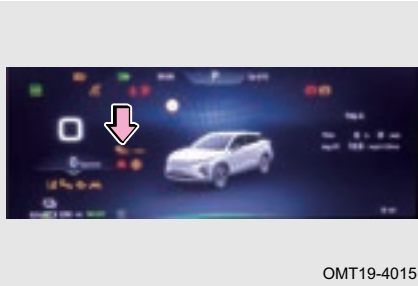
The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate ACC system:

1. Gear position is in D position.
2. Front compartment cover is not opened.
3. Active speed limit is not turned on.
4. Driver door is closed.
5. Driver seat belt is fastened.
6. Parking brake is not applied.
7. Anti-lock brake system is not activated.
8. Electronic stability program system is turned on.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

9. Electronic stability program system is not activated.
10. Hill descent control system is not turned on.
11. Brake pedal is not depressed (during driving).
12. Vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h) or an object is recognized in front.

### Usage methods



#### ■ Enter Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC)

Turn vehicle power to ON mode. When the activation conditions are met, it will enter the pre-cruising state automatically. " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on;

Method 1: In pre-cruising state, when vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h), press "SET-" or " " button to set current speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Method 2: In pre-cruising state, when vehicle speed is lower than 9 mph (15 km/h), press "SET-" or " " button to set cruise speed to 9 mph (15 km/h) and enter cruising state, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.


Method 3: In current ignition cycle, press "RES+" button after exiting ACC, set the last cruising set speed and enter cruising state, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

#### 📖 READ

- ACC is exited when turning on ASL.
- When there is a vehicle in front of your vehicle in the same lane, and driving speed is not higher than vehicle set speed, ACC will control the vehicle to follow vehicle ahead.
- When there is no vehicle in front in the same lane, or there is a vehicle in front in the same lane and driving speed is higher than set speed, your vehicle will drive at the set speed.
- When applying parking brake and entering pre-cruising state, press "SET-" button, instrument cluster will prompt "Please depress accelerator pedal to activate adaptive cruise control system (ACC)", driver depresses accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC according to the prompt.

#### ■ Exit adaptive cruise control

When one or more of the following situations occur in cruising process, ACC system will exit:

1. Front compartment cover is opened.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Driver door is opened.
4. Driver seat belt is not fastened.
5. Pull up electric parking button.
6. Press "" button.
7. HDC is turned on.
8. ESP operates.
9. ABS system operates.
10. AEB system operates.
11. ESP is not turned on.
12. Transmission gear is in a position other than D.
13. Driver depresses accelerator pedal for more than 15 minutes.

After the above conditions that cause the function to exit are resumed, press "RES+" button, enter cruising state and resume set state before exiting.

#### ■ Speed setting

Short press "RES+" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 mph (1 km/h).

Long press "RES+" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 mph (5 km/h); when vehicle speed exceeds 49mph (80 km/h), set vehicle speed will increase by 10 mph (10 km/h).


Short press "SET-" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 mph (1 km/h).

Long press "SET-" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 mph (5 km/h); when vehicle speed exceeds 49mph (80 km/h), set vehicle speed will decrease by 10 mph (10 km/h).

#### READ

- For ACC, the lowest speed setting is 9mph (15 km/h) and the highest speed setting is 93 mph (150 km/h).
- Speed will be slightly lower than set speed when driving uphill, and will be slightly higher than set speed when driving downhill.

#### Following clearance

Press "" button in cruising process, adjust following clearance which is divided into 5 levels from minimum clearance to maximum clearance.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

### READ

- Following clearance changes based on speed and increases with speed improving.
- In minimum clearance mode, the distance between the vehicle and vehicle ahead will quite small during following at low speed. For safety, select maximum clearance mode to follow vehicle ahead on slippery road.
- During following vehicle ahead and decreasing, ESP continuously performs brake and motor will generate operation sound when rotating, this is normal and please drive at ease.

### WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Please note that any drive behavior must confirm all traffic regulations.

### **Overtaking**

Depress accelerator pedal to exceed set speed in cruising process. After accelerator pedal is released, the control state will return to previous state. During overtaking, if the vehicle is too close to vehicle ahead, instrument cluster will pop up "Please take over the vehicle by driver" accompanied with urgent warning sound to remind driver to avoid.

### **Curve speed control**

Decrease the speed when vehicle enters curve in cruising process, which help driver to drive through curve safely.

### WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, drive through curve as slowly as possible in the whole driving process.
- While entering a curve, due to limitation of detection target for radar probe, vehicle ahead on the same driving route may not be detected in time, which requires the driver to be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.

### **Stopping and starting function**

Whilst following vehicle ahead in ACC mode, vehicle ahead decreases speed to stop, the vehicle also decreases to stop, after stopping:

1. Vehicle ahead starts to drive away within 3 seconds and the vehicle starts automatically to follow vehicle ahead.
2. If vehicle ahead stops for more than 3 seconds and starts within 3 seconds to 10 minutes, driver needs to depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC.




3. When vehicle stops within 10 minutes, driver unfastens seat belt or opens driver door, EPB is activated automatically for parking.
4. When vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the ACC will exit, and EPB will be activated automatically for parking.

 **WARNING**

Whilst following vehicle ahead, always pay attention to whether the instrument cluster displays the vehicle target in front. If the instrument cluster does not display the target in front, it means that target in front of ACC system has been lost, the vehicle will start to accelerate according to set speed.

### Precautions for adaptive cruise control

1. ACC system has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. If the vehicle is extremely close to vehicle on adjacent lanes, ACC system may select the vehicle as following target.
3. ACC system can not respond to stationary objects and vehicles, crosswise vehicles, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and animals.
4. When stopping vehicle briefly in ACC system mode, driver must confirm that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants such as pedestrians, bicycles and animals in front of the vehicle.
5. When ACC function is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on. At this time, ACC function fails, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
6. During ACC system controls vehicle, never inadvertently step on accelerator pedal, otherwise, ACC system will not apply brake to vehicle, driver should always be ready to brake actively to ensure the safety of the vehicle.
7. ACC system has a limited brake time reaction; if vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, another vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, or your vehicle cuts behind a vehicle that is slower, ACC system may fail to react or react to vehicle ahead too slow, in this case, driver should take over the vehicle control in time.
8. The distance to the vehicle ahead, adjacent lane conditions, and target type displayed on instrument cluster may be different from the actual situation. Driver must observe the vehicle and real road conditions in real time; Driver should adjust the proper distance from vehicle ahead and vehicle speed based on traffic flow, weather condition and other actual road conditions, and is responsible for ensuring that the vehicle can stop safely at any time. In inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.), ACC system may not recognize a vehicle ahead. In this case, ACC system should be turned off.

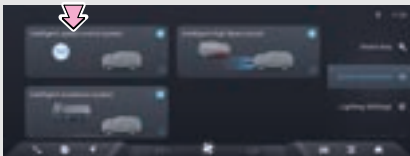
## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

9. ACC system is suitable for use on highways and roads in good condition. It is not recommended for use on urban roads, narrow roads, mountain roads, hills, tunnels, etc. If using ACC system on curves, target vehicle ahead may be lost or target selection is delayed due to limitation of sensor detection range, in this case, ACC system will control vehicle to accelerate to set speed.
10. During the process of following the vehicle ahead to stop, ACC system may not be able to recognize the end of the vehicle, but the lower or upper part of vehicle (such as rear axle of truck that has higher chassis, upper part of lower flatbed trailer). In these cases, system cannot ensure a proper stopping distance or even lead to collision. Therefore, driver must keep a watch on vehicle and be ready to take over vehicle control anytime during this process.
11. Two sensors of radar and camera are installed in the front area of vehicle and behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by debris, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified or decorated with license plate frames, etc. When sensor is completely covered by snow, ACC system function will be exited. Sensors may also be affected by vibration or collision, and system performance may be reduced or its function fails. In this case, please go to authorized service centre for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

### Speed Control Function (SCF)

When the vehicle is in cruising state (ACC or TJA/ICA), it can improve safety, reduces the risk of overspeed/penalty points and reduces the burden on driver by receiving speed limit sign information on road ahead detected by SLA and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, when driver presses the "SET-" button during speed limit pop-up window, uses SLA speed limit value as cruise target speed to control the vehicle.



OMT19-4017

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on Intelligent Speed Control through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Driver Assistance.

 READ

If the driver does not confirm during the first pop-up window, another pop-up window will appear after 1 minute; thereafter, no more pop-up window will be shown until the new speed limit sign appears (the new speed limit sign is not the same as the previous one).

**Speed Control Function (SCF) activation conditions**

The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate SCF:

1. SLA is turned on.
2. ACC is activated.
3. Speed set by ACC system > SLA speed limit value.

**6-3. Lane Assist System****Lane Assist System**

Lane assist system includes LDW, LKA and ELK, which can assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.

 READ

- Keep front view multi-function camera free from obstructions (such as bird droppings, insects and ice, etc.).
- Lane line captured by camera: It can detect white solid line, white dotted line, yellow solid line, yellow dotted line and double solid line lanes.
- The system may not operate in cold and bad weather conditions, such as rain, snow or fog and high contrast lighting will affect the sensor.
- The system may not operate when driving on cement road.
- The system may not operate when driving in road construction area.
- The system may not operate when driving on flooded or muddy roads.
- The system may not work when driving on sharp turns or narrow roads.
- The system will only work normally on the roads with two clear lane lines.
- When only single-sided lane line is detected, the system alarm stability decreases.
- If sensor is disturbed, the system may not work.
- Sensors may misidentify temporary construction markings on the road, etc. and give false alarm by mistake.
- If your vehicle suspension kit is not approved by us, the lane assist system may not operate properly.

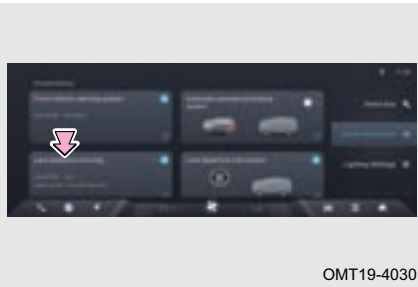
## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

### WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Lane assist system only offers assistance to the driver. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

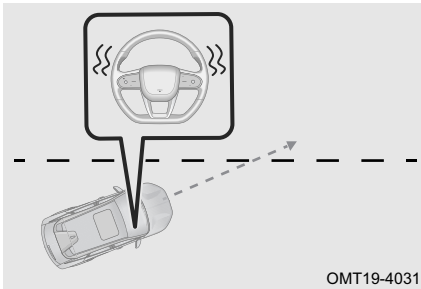
### Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

LDW detects lane line by front view multi-function camera. The system sends an alarm when wheel rolls over lane line and vehicle departs from its lane.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on lane assist alert method and set the lane assist sensitivity through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Driver Assistance.

### Activating Lane Departure Warning (LDW)




When vehicle speed is no less than 40mph (65 km/h) and lane line is recognized, LDW enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 40mph (65 km/h) and vehicle departs from one lane line, LDW is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 40mph (65 km/h) to 37 mph (60 km/h), LDW enters limit status.

### Lane Departure Warning (LDW) indicator

When function is turned on/limited, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, " " green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

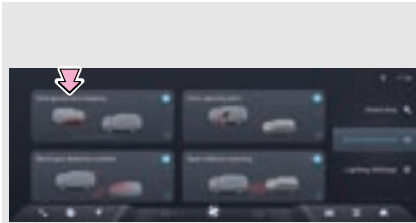
### Function limit

■ Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When turning with high speed.
3. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
4. When depressing brake pedal with excess force.
5. When turning on the hazard light.
6. When turning on departure indicator turn signal light.
7. When driving on roads with tight curves.
8. When lane line is too thin, broken, blurred or departure side has no lane line.

### Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)

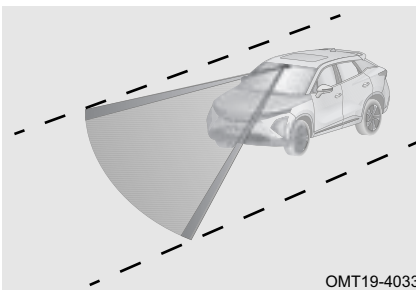
ELK uses front view multi-function camera and rear corner radar to detect in real time that the vehicle departs from solid lane marker, road edge, oncoming or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes, if so, the vehicle continues to lateral movement or the system control lateral movement if necessary, which can keep the vehicle in the original lane and assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.



OMT19-4032

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on emergency lane keeping through audio system - vehicle setting - Driver Assistance.

Note: ELK is turned on by default after the vehicle is powered on.



OMT19-4033

When vehicle speed is no less than 40mph (65 km/h) and vehicle target is monitored, ELK enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 40mph (65 km/h) and monitored vehicle target is approached, ELK is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 40mph (65 km/h) or more to 37 mph (60 km/h) or less, ELK enters limit status.


## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

### CAUTION

- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting a large curve.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road).

### Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) indicator

When function is turned on/limited, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, " " red indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

### Function limit

■ ELK may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When lane is too narrow.
3. When lane is too wide.
4. When lane line is lost.
5. When the braking force is too large.
6. When turning with high speed.
7. When hazard lights are turned on.
8. When double solid line lanes are detected and turn signal light is turned on.
9. When EPS is not ready (such as malfunction).
10. When ABS or ESP is activated.
11. When TJA/ICA is activated.
12. Steering wheel is operated by driver when ELK applies corrective steering intervention.

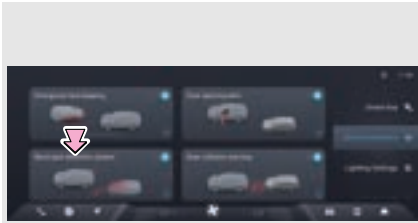
■ Under the following situations, do not use ELK. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. At night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

## 6-4. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

### Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System

BSD system is used to monitor presence of moving vehicles in left and right rear areas of your vehicle and inform driver related information to remind the driver for driving safety and lane-changing safety. This system extends Lane Change Assist (LCA) system and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system.



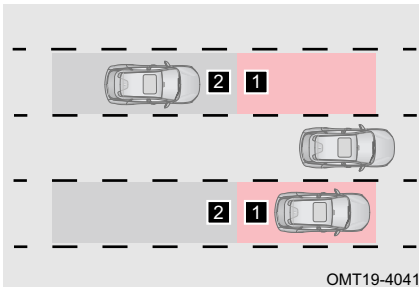
OMT19-4040

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on Blind Spot Detection system through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Driver Assistance.

#### WARNING

BSD only offers assistance to the driver. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

### Activating Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system/Lane Change Assist (LCA) system



OMT19-4041

When speed is no less than 9 mph (15 km/h), BSD is activated; When speed decreases from 9 mph (15 km/h) or more to 6 mph (10 km/h), BSD enters pre-activating.

- 1** Detection area of BSD
- 2** Vehicle approaches detection area of BSD

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. "BS" yellow indicator on rear view mirror remains on, "BS" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.



Level II: On base of level I, turn on the turn signal light in the same side. After level alarm II is triggered, "BS" yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks, "BS" yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks, alarm sounds.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

### CAUTION

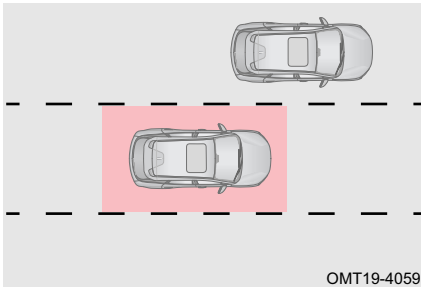
- When lots of snow or ice accumulates on rear bumper and near radar sensor, or if drive on snowy road for a long time, BSD system may not work.
- When towing or attaching accessories to rear of vehicle (such as a bicycle carrier), turn off BSD system. Otherwise, radar radio waves will be affected, causing system work abnormally.
- BSD/LCA system may detects stationary objects on or near a road (such as guardrails, tunnels, side walls, and parked vehicles) to turn on warning light.

### Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system indicator



During operation, level alarm I "" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on; level alarm II "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.



When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

### Door Opening Warning (DOW) System



When vehicle power is in OFF/ACC/ON mode and the vehicle is stationary, if blind spot detection assist system detects approaching vehicles on left and right sides of the vehicle and any door is opened, DOW sounds an alarm to remind the driver/occupant to pay attention to following vehicle when exiting to avoid collision.

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. "" yellow indicator on corresponding side rear view mirror remains on, "" indicator on corresponding side rear door trim panel remains on.

Level II: On base of level I, open the door. After level alarm II is triggered, "" yellow indicator on corresponding side rear mirror blinks, "" indicator on corresponding side rear door trim panel comes on, alarm sounds.

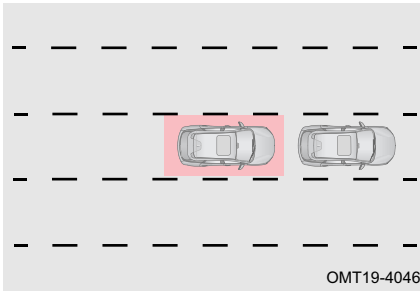
### Function limit

■ DOW may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. The vehicle speed is higher than 0 mph (km/h).
2. After switching vehicle power to OFF mode for 5 minutes.
3. When turning vehicle power to OFF mode and enters arming mode within 5 minutes.

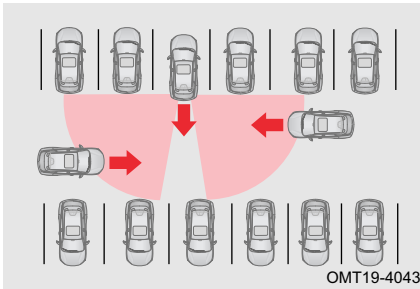



## Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System



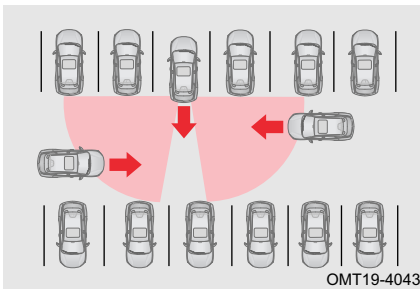
With vehicle power in ON mode and vehicle speed  $\geq 9$  mph (15 km/h), instrument cluster will sound an alarm when there is a vehicle in the rear lane of the vehicle rapidly approaching the vehicle.

## Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System



When vehicle power is turned to ON mode and vehicle is backed up (-shift lever is in R position), BSD detects that vehicles are approaching from left/right sides, "  " yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks and alarm sounds.

## Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB) System



RCTB warns and assists driver in braking when the vehicle power is turned to ON mode, all doors are closed, the steering wheel angle is less than the threshold, the vehicle is backed up (shift lever is in R position), the vehicle speed is no higher than 9 mph (15 km/h) and a vehicle or pedestrian crossing the road is encountered when exiting a perpendicular/oblique parking space. Help drivers avoid collisions with vehicles or pedestrians crossing the road, especially if the driver's view is blocked by vehicles parked nearby.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

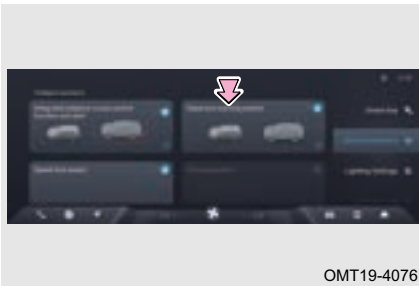
### CAUTION

- RCTB is an assist function, and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- Certain scenarios can affect and weaken the detection of sensor, and the system may perform unnecessary warning and braking or fail to detect all obstacles.
- Never modify the area around sensor in any way. After modification, it is recommended to turn off RCTB, otherwise the system may apply unnecessary braking.

### 6-5. Driving Safety Assist System

#### Leaving Reminder System (DAI)

DAI allows users to relax and focus on things other than driving when waiting in line at traffic lights controlled intersections or congested roads. When the traffic environment changes, it assists drivers in restoring driving in a timely manner.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on Leaving Reminder System through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Driver Assistance.

■ At intersections controlled by traffic lights or congested roads, when vehicle is waiting in line and meet the following conditions, the system will sound an alarm and the instrument cluster will dynamically display the vehicle ahead to remind the driver to resume driving:

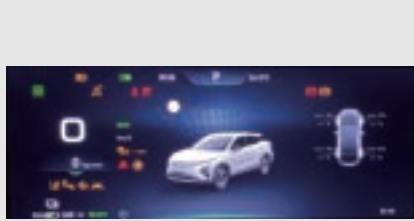
1. Vehicle in front is detected leaving.
2. This vehicle is in a stationary state.
3. ACC system of this vehicle is not activated.

### READ

When waiting in line, if another vehicle is inserted between your vehicle and vehicle in front, DAI system abandons the original vehicle target and selects the inserted vehicle as the new target.

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

TPMS is an active safety configuration and can monitor pressure and temperature of tyre in real-time and the information can be checked through information display area. When tyre pressure and temperature are abnormal, TPMS will alert driver that the vehicle is in need of attention.



OMT19-4052

On driving information screen, move steering wheel button upward/downward to tyre pressure display screen, then tyre pressure and temperature values can be checked.

When speed is no less than 15 mph (25 km/h), if TPMS has not received radio-frequency signal from one or more sensors after several minutes, TPMS will send a malfunction warning, "⚠️" yellow indicator on instrument cluster will blink for tens of seconds and then remain on

### READ

Even if vehicle is equipped with TPMS, check if tyre pressure and appearance are normal before driving. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair as necessary.

### Low pressure warning



OMT19-4053

When tyre pressure is lower than 176 kPa and speed is no less than 15mph (25 km/h) for a period of time, the system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre pressure value will be displayed and "⚠️" yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF and tyre pressure is lower than 176 kPa, the system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre pressure value will be displayed and "⚠️" yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When low pressure warning occurs, please inflate the tyre to 220 kPa as soon as possible. After the vehicle is driven at a speed of no less than 15 mph (25

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

km/h) for a period of time, low pressure warning will be automatically canceled.

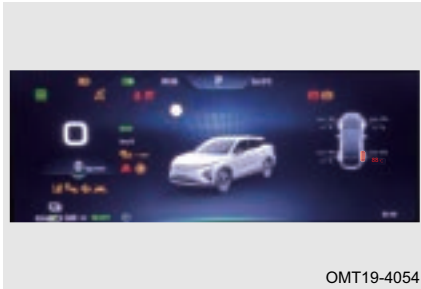
### READ


Tyre low pressure warning light comes on, reminding the user to check the tyre pressure and maintain the tyre pressure within the normal range.


### CAUTION

Low tyre pressure will increase power consumption and aggravate tyre wear (- serious tyre wear may cause a risk of tyre blowout), inspect causes of tyre air leakage. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

## High temperature warning



When tyre temperature is higher than 85°C and speed is no less than 15 mph (25 km/h) for a period of time, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre temperature value will be displayed and "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF and tyre temperature is higher than 85°C, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre temperature value will be displayed and "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When high temperature warning occurs, wait until the tyre temperature is lower than 80°C and the vehicle is driven at a speed of no less than 15 mph (25 km/h) for a period of time, the high temperature warning will be automatically canceled.

### CAUTION

When high temperature warning occurs, stop driving at once to cool down tyres naturally. Do not cool it down by pouring cold water, otherwise, tyre may be damaged, causing an accident. Please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

## Function limit

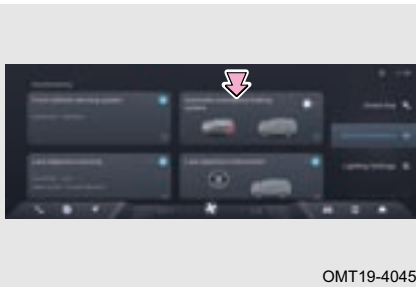
■ TPMS may send system malfunction warning in the following conditions:

1. Configuration learning of tyre pressure monitoring system is not performed after replacing wheels (spare tyre included).

2. Tyre pressure sensor or other components has been damaged, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.
3. TPMS may be affected by electromagnetic shielding of sensor due to installation of tyre chains.
4. TPMS may not work properly due to interference of electronic equipment (over standard equipment) installed on vehicle, resulting in false warning.
5. TPMS may not operate due to radio interference; And it may be interfered temporarily due to strong electromagnetic radio signals with same frequency (433 MHz).

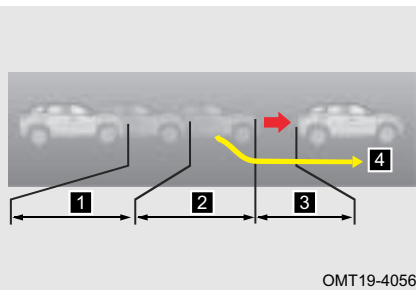
### Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/Front Collision Warning (FCW) System

When vehicle is about to hit a vehicle or pedestrian ahead, AEB system and FCW system work together, sounding an alarm to remind driver, if driver cannot respond quickly enough, vehicle will brake automatically, reducing loss from collision.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on Automatic Emergency Braking System, Front Collision Warning through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Driver Assistance.

### Activating Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) system/Front Collision Warning (FCW) system




- 1** Start pre-warning before impacting.
- 2** Start braking partly before impacting.
- 3** Start emergency braking before impacting.
- 4** If driver reacts correctly (for example, avoid a collision by steering), the following emergency braking is canceled.

#### READ

Some configurations only work on vehicle targets, not pedestrians or cyclists.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING


### CAUTION

- When vehicle speed is lower than 18mph (30 km/h), FCW system does not send an alarm; When speed is higher than 52 mph (85 km/h), FCW does not sound an alarm for static target ahead.
- Operating speed range of AEB is 2 - 38 mph (4 - 62 km/h) for static vehicle target (2 - 29 mph (4 - 48 km/h) for some models); Operating speed range of AEB is 2 - 52 mph (4 - 85 km/h) for moving vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 2 - 40mph (4 - 65 km/h) for pedestrians and cyclists (not support for some models).
- Driver needs to ensure that seat belts have been fastened, doors are closed. Failure to do so, AEB system does not work.
- Turn on ESP, FCW, AEB, otherwise, FCW and AEB do not work.
- "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Driver needs to take over vehicle because vehicle does not keep stationary state when vehicle is braked automatically to stop.
- During activation of AEB system, driver quickly rotates steering wheel or depresses accelerator pedal firmly, AEB system will exit.

### WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- AEB system just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The vehicles that can be detected by AEB system include passenger vehicles, buses, trucks. For some vehicles, such as such as cement tank trucks, special vehicles with higher or lower chassis, AEB system has certain limitations in detecting.
- AEB system will work when it detects some characteristics consistent with normal human walking (such as head swing, arm swing, leg swing). AEB system detects pedestrians who across the vehicle' s lane, but AEB system does not detect pedestrians who walk alongside the lane, who are around a corner or who are blocked by any other objects.
- AEB system can only play the best role when it detects body and bicycle contour information as well as normal cycling movements. AEB system does not regard an oncoming cyclist as target.
- AEB system is not always capable of detecting vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians, and AEB system may generate unnecessary braking automatically or not work for a variety of reasons. AEB system is only a driving assistance system to reduce severity of collision, it is not always possible to completely avoid collision in the speed range.

### Precautions for Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) system

1. AEB system has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Driver controls speed and the distance from vehicle ahead according to weather, road surface conditions, traffic conditions, etc.
3. AEB system does not react to animals, crossing vehicles, incoming vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians.
4. System performance will be greatly limited for targets that cut into the lane quickly, targets that are detected after the vehicle changes lanes, and targets in curves.
5. Fasten all seat belts and secure all loads to avoid danger when AEB system is triggered.
6. When AEB is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster comes on, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
7. When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester, FCW system and AEB system should be turned off.
8. When installing non-full size spare tyre, it is recommended that customer turns off FCW system and AEB system, and replace full-size tyres of original vehicle in time.
9. In some special circumstances, AEB system may perform unnecessary warning and braking, such as crossing the track of the road, entering the underground parking lot turning, etc. Some circumstances will affect and weaken sensor detection, effecting related functions of system, such as tunnel, light of incoming vehicle, reflection of slippery road.
10. Two sensors of radar and camera are installed in the front area of vehicle and behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by dirt, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified or decorated with license plate frames, etc. When sensor is completely covered by snow, system function will exit. Sensors may also be affected by vibration or collision, and AEB performance may be reduced or its function fails. In this case, please go to authorized service centre for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect AEB system normal operation. AEB system function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

### 6-6. Intelligent High Beam Assist System (HMA)

Intelligent high beam assist system can turn on and off high beam light automatically. When driving at night, high beam lights will turn on automatically if there are no vehicles detected in the opposite or same direction, and related external environment and traffic conditions meet the conditions; If ahead vehicles driving in the opposite or same direction or urban roads are detected, high beam lights will turn off automatically, providing convenience for driver while preventing abuse of high beam lights. Meanwhile, driver can turn on/off high beam lights forcefully by manual operation.

#### ■ Intelligent high beam ON/OFF

- Starting vehicle, and turn the headlight combination switch to "AUTO" position. When the low beam light automatically turns on, pull wiper combination switch away from steering wheel side and release, intelligent high beam assist system is activated, the white indicator "⊞⊞⊞⊞" in instrument cluster comes on; When the vehicle speed is 24mph (40 km/h) or more, the intelligent high beam assist system automatically turns headlight high beam on/off according to road conditions such as meeting, following, and overtaking.
- When the intelligent high beam assist system is activated, the headlight high beam turns on or flashes, the white indicator "⊞⊞⊞⊞" in instrument cluster goes off. Pull wiper combination switch away from steering wheel side and release, intelligent high beam assist system is reactivated.

#### READ

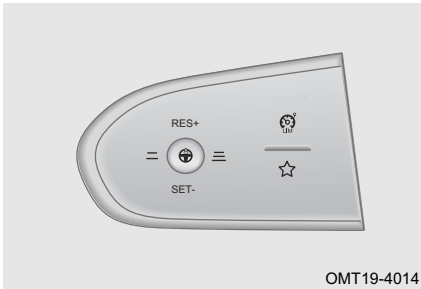
- When the vehicle speed is lower than 18 mph (30 km/h), the intelligent high beam assist system turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the ambient brightness is too high, the intelligent high beam assist system turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When ESP/ABS is activated or steering is too fast, the intelligent high beam assist system can not turn the headlight high beam on/off automatically.
- In foggy weather, when fog lights are activated, headlight high beam will turn off automatically.
- Headlight high beam will turn off automatically when wiper operation is too fast.
- When 3 or more street lights are detected by camera, high beam lights will turn off automatically.
- Intelligent high beam assist system can be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".



## 6-7. Intelligent Cruise Control System

**Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System**

TJA/ICA detects lane line through the front view camera to perform vertical and horizontal control for vehicle, providing driving assistance and reducing driver's workload under monotonous driving environment or busy traffic. This system also extends the Intelligent Avoidance System (IES).

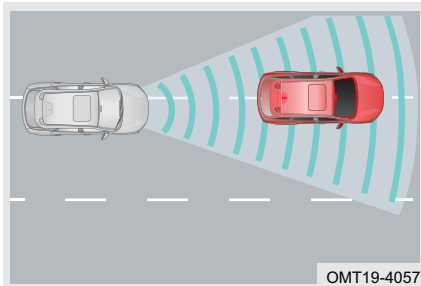
**Activating Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) system/Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) system**

Main button "⊕":

Activate/exit function: When TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, short press main button to activate/exit TJA/ICA;

Mode switching function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, or TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, long press the main button to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are not met, "⊕" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on; If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are met, "⊕" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.



TJA: When vehicle speed is lower than 37 mph (60 km/h), vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, the vehicle follows vehicle ahead as driving target. If neither lane line nor target vehicle is detected, TJA will be turned off.

ICA: When vehicle speed is 37 mph (60 km/h) to 93mph (150 km/h), vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, ICA will be turned off regardless of whether there is a target vehicle ahead.

**Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System/Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) system indicator**

When it is pre-activated, "⊕" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

When it is activated, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

### Function limit


■ TJA/ICA system may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. Hands off steering wheel.
2. Turn signal lights are turned on.
3. Hazard lights are turned on.
4. Lane line is not detected.
5. Overly narrow or wide lanes.
6. Too small lane curve radius.
7. Driver rotates steering wheel actively.
8. Any exiting condition for ACC system exists.

### WARNING

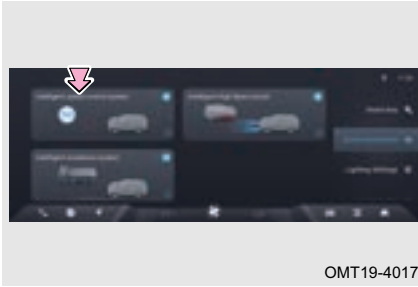
- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- TJA/ICA system only offers assistance to the driver. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

### Suggest to use Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) system/Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) system

When TJA/ICA monitors vehicle speed is higher than 37 mph (60 km/h), the current lane lines are clear and persistent, and ACC is in cruising state, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on. After a certain period of time, the instrument cluster pop-up window prompts "Road conditions are good, we suggest you to turn on Intelligent Cruise Control system".

### Exiting reminder for Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) system/Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) system

When TJA/ICA exits from the activated state, the system issues an alarm sound and the instrument cluster pop-up window prompts "Intelligent Cruise Control system has exited, please note" to inform the driver that the function has exited.



OMT19-4017

Turn vehicle power to ON mode. Turn on Exit Reminding for Intelligent Cruise Control through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Driver Assistance.

If you feel that the exiting reminder will interfere with driving, you can turn off this reminder function according to your preference.

### Precautions for Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) system/Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) system

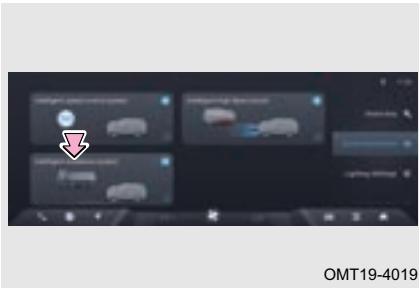
1. TJA/ICA system is driving assistance system, has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Longitudinal control of TJA/ICA is performed by ACC, lateral control of TJA/ICA is performed by LKA, all precautions for ACC and LKA are also applicable to the system.
3. TJA/ICA system does not provide automatic driving function and does not allow hand off driving. Under the conditions such as turning, crossing, merging and vehicle ahead cuts in, driver should control vehicle at all times to ensure safety.
4. TJA/ICA system performance is affected by weather, illumination and lane line clarity. Under the conditions of backlight, sunset, night, snow and ice on the road surface and unclear lane lines due to road wear, the performance will be significantly reduced or even lost.
5. When TJA/ICA is malfunctioning, "🚨" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, at this time, TJA/ICA function fails, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take responsibility for the vehicle control.

### Intelligent Avoidance System (IES)

Under the active control of TJA/ICA (driving in the lane), when the vehicle speed is 37 mph (60km/h) to 93mph (150 km/h) and the vehicle is about to overtake larger vehicles (such as trucks and buses) in the adjacent lane, the system controls the lateral movement of vehicle appropriately to keep it away from large vehicles until the overtaking is completed.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING



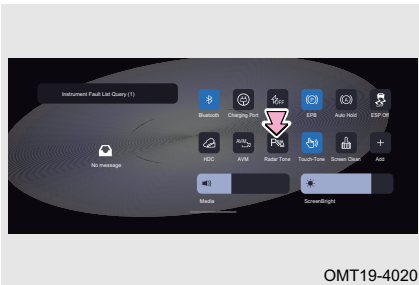
Turn vehicle power to ON mode. Turn on Intelligent Avoidance through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Driver Assistance.

### 6-8. Parking Assist System

#### Parking Radar Assist System

Parking radar assist system is a ultrasonic waves radar detection device, adopts ultrasonic waves radar sensors to detect if there are obstacles from front/rear of vehicle. The driver is prompted by the audio head unit display, sound alarm, etc., so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

#### Parking radar switch (if equipped)



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, the shortcut menu screen can be displayed by sliding the screen down in the audio screen.

When vehicle is stationary and not in P, click "P" button to turn on parking radar system; Click the "P" button again to exit the parking radar system (Note: not in R).

Note: When parking radar system is operating and vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h), it exits parking radar system; when vehicle speed is less than 9 mph (15 km/h), it is necessary to click "P" button again to reactivate the system.

#### System information display

- Models with two sensors at front and four sensors at rear: Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and shift the shift lever to R to activate parking radar system; When ultrasonic waves radar sensor detects an obstacle, the head unit will display a green, yellow, and red area in sequence based on the distance from the obstacles, as well as an alarm sound reminder.
- For models with 8 sensors: Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and click the parking radar switch or shift the shift lever to R to activate parking radar system; When ultrasonic waves radar sensor detects an obstacle, the head

unit will display a green, yellow, and red area in sequence based on the distance from the obstacles, as well as an alarm sound reminder.

| Distance from vehicle to obstacles | Obstacle alarm curve color | Alarm sound                   |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| There is a risk of collision       | Green                      | Short alarm sound             |
| Near                               | Yellow                     | Long alarm sound              |
| Very near                          | Red                        | Long alarm sound continuously |

(Note: The curve color is displayed in AVW or reverse image)

Note: When the ultrasonic waves radar probe is malfunctioning, parking radar system will sound for 2 seconds when it is turned on. When parking brake is applied or the shift lever is changed to P, the ultrasonic waves radar sensor malfunction warning sound will be shielded.

#### READ

- Monitoring distance is the shortest vertical distance between obstacle and ultrasonic waves radar.
- When parking brake is applied with ultrasonic waves radar activated, audio head unit will only display arc information, and audio head unit prompt does not sound.
- Regardless of whether the parking radar system is activated before moving shift lever to R position, parking radar system still operates when shifting to other positions (except for P gear).

#### CAUTION

- For obstacles out of detection range, radar sensors will not alarm.
- The parking radar system detection has blind spots and may sound not alarm, sound wrong alarm, or delay alarm when there is a risk. Users should not rely excessively on the parking radar system alarm information. When encountering obstacles, users need to control the vehicle brake in time to avoid accidents.

#### Function limit

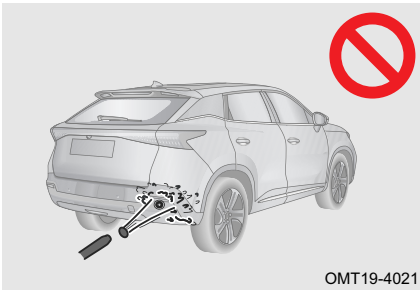
■ Parking radar system may not work normally in the following conditions:

1. When vehicle is on a steep slope.
2. When driving in jelly-like snow or rain.
3. Low objects such as rocks, etc. cannot be detected.
4. Objects higher than bumper cannot be detected.
5. Thin objects such as wires, fences and ropes, etc. cannot be detected.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

6. When vehicle is equipped with a high frequency radio or antenna is in use.
7. When radar sensor surfaces are frozen, they will not detect any obstacle.
8. When radar sensors are covered by dirt, snow or mud, they may not detect obstacles.
9. Objects that easily absorb ultrasonic waves (such as soft snow, cotton, sponge) cannot be detected.
10. When there is noise near the vehicle, (such as vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves).
11. If multiple radar sensors detect multiple obstacles, the distances between each radar sensor and each obstacle are displayed on audio head unit simultaneously, and system sounds according to nearest obstacle.
12. The parking radar system function is not available when the towing hook is connected.

### Cleaning radar sensor



When washing vehicle, use a soft cloth or water (low water pressure) to wash off foreign matter such as snow, mud, and dust on the surface of radar sensor.

High pressure water flow such as water cable or large external forces may damage the radar sensors. Do not pinch or impact the radar sensors, otherwise the sensors will not work normally.

### Parking View Monitor System (RVC) (If Equipped)

RVC collects the rear view image of vehicle through rear camera and displays the rear view and lane guideline by audio head unit, providing safety and easy parking for driver.

#### Usage methods

Move shift lever to R to enter RVC screen, and the screen will display the parking view monitor and lane guideline. Lane guideline varies depending on steering wheel rotation and it is used for prejudging the reversing traveling trace.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Use the distance as a reference (such as on the hill).
- Vehicle width guideline and predicting line are wider than the actual line.
- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- If tyre is replaced with a different size, the displayed predicting line is different from the actual line, please use the rear view mirror or check and determine distance to other objects actually.

**⚠ WARNING**

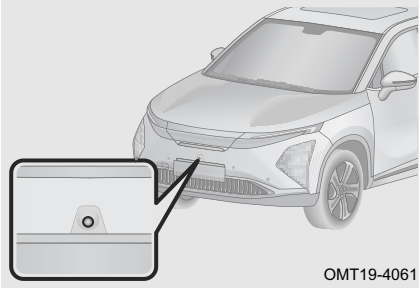
- When reversing, make sure that boot door is firmly closed.
- Never distract your attention from surrounding traffic due to images on display.
- When reversing, always pay extra attention to surrounding children, small animals and objects, because they cannot always be detected by camera.
- Due to the limited monitoring range, RVC cannot view the bottom and corners of bumper.
- Never hit the lens. It is a precise instrument. Hitting the lens may lead to malfunction or damage, causing a fire or electric shock.
- Because rear camera uses wide-angle lens, object distance displayed on RVC is different from the actual distance.
- When washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water, do not spray water around the camera, otherwise, water will enter camera and condense on the lens, causing malfunction, fire, or electric shock.
- Rear camera lens may enlarge and distort the view, so image on display is different from real object or it cannot reflect the real object accurately, and there is also blind spot and a little delay.
- RVC is convenient, but it is not a substitute for correct reverse operation. When reversing, be sure to look around to check if the surrounding is safe and reverse slowly.

**Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM) (If Equipped)**

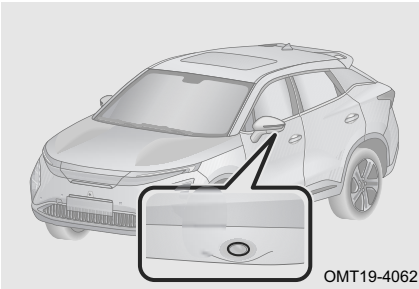
AVM collects the surrounding view image of the vehicle through four cameras and displays the surrounding view and lane guideline via audio head unit, providing safety and easy parking for driver.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

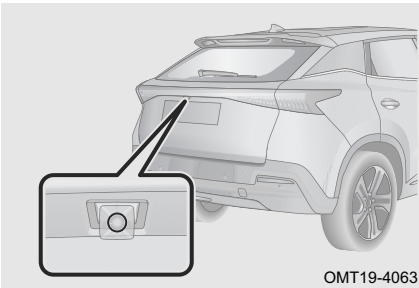
### Camera layout



Installation position of front camera:  
Intake grille of front bumper.



Installation position of left/right camera:  
Bottom of left/right outside rear view mirror.



Installation position of rear camera:  
Upper middle part of rear license plate.

### Usage methods

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and vehicle speed is lower than 18 mph (30 km/h):

Method 1: Move shift lever to R to enter AVM; Move shift lever out from R to exit AVM.

Method 2: The shortcut menu screen can be displayed by sliding the screen down in the audio main screen. Click the "⊕" button to enter AVM; Click the "⏪" button to exit AVM.

Method 3: Turn on the left/right turn signal light to enter AVM (it is necessary to turn on "operate indicator signal lights to activate panoramic view monitor" in AVM setting); Turn off left/right turn signal lights to exit AVM.



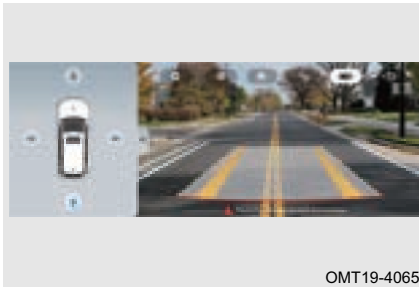
Method 4: Turning at a large angle to enter AVM (it is necessary to turn on "-turn to activate panoramic view monitor" in AVM setting).


Note: After turning vehicle power to OFF mode or vehicle speed is higher than 18 mph (30 km/h), it exits AVM.


### READ


AVM provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and distance. The image has a little delay and blind area compared with the actual situation. Therefore, the panoramic view function cannot substitute the driver operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.



### Switching view





Click " " button, and shift lever is not in R, exit AVM.

Click " " button to enter panoramic view monitor system setting.

Click " " button to switch to unilateral + birds-eye view.

Click " " button to switch to 3D view + birds-eye view. Click " " button around the birds-eye view of vehicle to switch the corresponding 3D view.

Click " " button to switch to front wide-angle view, and then click button again to switch to rear wide-angle view.

Click " " button to switch to front wheel side view, and then click button again to switch to rear wheel side view.

### READ

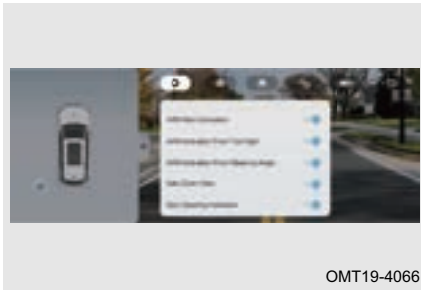
AVM is very helpful for parking and safe driving. It is recommended that you should be familiar with this function in advance in an open and convenient area.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

### CAUTION

- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- Do not place any object on the camera of AVM.
- The object distance seen from the AVM is different from the actual distance.
- Before using AVM, make sure to extend outside rear view mirrors and close boot door firmly.
- AVM has been calibrated professionally before leaving the factory. Any unauthorized removal/installation and change of camera installation position and angle may affect the function and effect of AVM.
- AVM provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and distance. The image has a little delay and blind area compared with the actual situation. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

### System setting



[AVM Start Animation]: ON/OFF.

[AVM Activation From Turn light]: ON/OFF.

[AVM Activation From Steering Angle]: ON/OFF.

[Auto Zoom View]: ON/OFF.

[Door Open Indication]: ON/OFF.

[Vehicle Trajectory]: ON/OFF.

[PDC Display]: ON/OFF.

[Transparent]: Set Close/Translucent/Transparent.

[Restore default setting] Restore default settings.

## 6-9. Driver Monitoring System

### Driver Monitoring System (DMS)









DMS (Driver Monitoring System) uses the infrared camera arranged in the cabin to monitor driving status of driver in real time and collects the face image of driver (such as yawning, eyes closed, nodding, etc.) and line-of-sight area information in real time, judging the driver status in real time. The camera only captures the face of driver, does not capture the rest of the vehicle. The entire face information captured will not be used for personal identification and will not be stored. The system is enabled by default.

#### ■ Main function

1. Determine if driver is fatigued by monitoring facial expression, eye closure, blinking frequency, etc. of driver. When detecting that driver is in a state of fatigue, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
2. Determine where the driver is looking and if the driver is distracted by tracking driver line-of-sight. When the driver is detected to be distracted, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
3. The system is enabled by default every time the vehicle is started, and can be turned off manually on head unit screen. After each power-on, the system will perform self-check, when the camera is blocked or system is malfunctioning, the corresponding prompt will display on instrument cluster.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

### ■ Alarm hint

| Speed                      | Status                | Pop-up Prompt                             | Audio   | Icon  |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| ≥ 6<br>mph<br>(10<br>km/h) | Mild fatigue          | Please consider taking a break!           | Sound once  |  |
|                            | Moderate fatigue      | It is recommended that you take a break!  | Sound once  |  |
|                            | Severe fatigue        | Please stop and take a break!             | Continue sounding until driver opens his/her eyes |  |
| ≥ 12<br>mph (20<br>km/h)   | Distraction           | You have been distracted!                 | Sound once  |  |
|                            | Prolonged distraction | You have been distracted for a long time! | Sound once  |  |
| N/A                        | Blocked               | The camera is blocked!                    | /   |  |
|                            | Malfunction           | DMS needs to be checked                   | /   |  |
|                            | Normal                | /   | /   |  |

#### CAUTION

- Do not use abrasive or sharp objects to clean the camera.
- Please check that the camera is clean and free of obstructions to ensure that the system works properly.

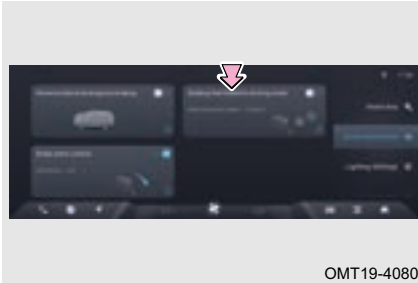
#### WARNING

Driver fatigue monitoring system is only an auxiliary tool. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle. Fatigue and distracted driving are strictly prohibited. Driver must always concentrate on driving carefully.

## 6-10. Braking Force Control System

### Integrated Braking Force Control System

Integrated braking force control system is an advanced decoupling electro-hydraulic brake system, which can provide the vehicle with power as "it needs" according to the driver's braking requirement; It integrates the functions of vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, ESP, ABS etc. to enhance vehicle stability and comfort.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on Brake Feel Associated with Driving Mode through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Driver Assistance, and set brake feel mode. Integrated braking force control system is equipped with two kinds of braking feeling (comfort/sport), which is used to adjust brake pedal feeling. The relationship curve between brake pedal depth and vehicle deceleration is different in different modes, and the driver can select preferred style of braking pedal feeling.

#### READ

Braking feeling can be associated with driving mode. After association, the braking feeling is comfort in the vehicle Normal mode/ECO mode, while the braking feeling is sport in vehicle Sport mode; After disassociation, braking feeling can be set to comfort/sport separately.

### Electronic Stability Control System (ESP)

Electronic stability control system keeps vehicle stability when oversteering or understeering. When oversteering or understeering is detected, system applies braking to one or more wheels to enhance control of vehicle stability and ensure the lateral stability of vehicle driving.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, the shortcut menu screen can be displayed by sliding the screen down in the audio screen.

When vehicle is stationary, click "OFF" button to turn off ESP system; Click "OFF" button again to turn on ESP system.

### READ

- Electronic Stability Control (ESP) system cannot be turned off during operation.
- When driving vehicle for the first time, Electronic Stability Control System (ESP) is on by default.
- Electronic stability control system alarms abnormally after replacing with the non-full size spare tyre. After using the normal size tyre and driving for 0.6214 mile (1 km), it will automatically return to normal.

### Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system indicator

When turning off, "OFF" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

During operation, "OFF" yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, "OFF" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

### READ

ESP alarms after replacing with the non-full size spare tyre. After using the normal size tyre and driving for 0.6214 mile (1 km), it will automatically return to normal.

### WARNING

- When ESP is malfunctioning, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Even when ESP is working, high driving speed, sharp turns or poor road conditions and other reasons can cause an accident.
- ESP function can not completely ensure that you can take over vehicle if it has lost control due to various extreme situations. Even with ESP, always follow laws and regulations, drive carefully to avoid accidents.

### Function limit

■ If any of the following conditions occurs, ESP needs to be turned off:

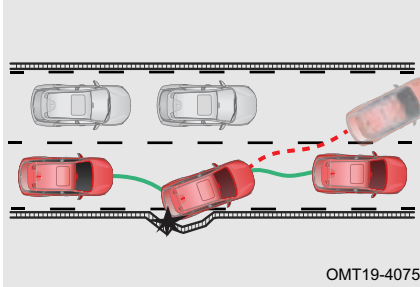
1. When driving with tyre chains.
2. When starting vehicle on power tester.

### 3. When driving on roads with deep snow or loose gravel.

#### READ

To improve vehicle traction when driving on sand or gravel, it is recommended to turn ESP off.

### Secondary Collision Mitigation System (MCB)



MCB detects that the vehicle has been involved in a collision, ESP system performs active braking to slow down the vehicle and prevent a secondary collision. During the braking process, the vehicle can still maintain control, further ensuring the safety of yourself and pedestrians.

#### Function limit

■ In the following conditions, MCB system may not work properly:

1. When the airbag system has malfunctions.
2. When the ESP system has malfunctions.
3. When ESP system is turned off.

### Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

HDC can help vehicle drive on steep roads safely under controlled conditions. After HDC is turned on, when vehicle is driving down on a steep slope, speed control range is 10 - 35 km/h. When initial speed is lower than the minimum speed, the vehicle will control at the minimum speed by default. The current control vehicle speed can be increased or decreased in a given speed range by depressing accelerator or brake pedal.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, slide down the audio screen to display shortcut menu screen and fault inquiry information.

When the vehicle is stationary, click "HDC" button to turn on HDC system; When the vehicle speed is more than 37 mph (60 km/h) or click "HDC" button again to turn off HDC system.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

### CAUTION

- Before entering steep road, set HDC so that driver can operate steering wheel without distraction.
- When HDC is working, the ABS will turn on automatically if there is a tyre lock.
- When HDC is working, if any wheel loses contact with ground, the braking force will be distributed to the wheel with higher adhesion coefficient.
- HDC actively applies the braking force through the ESP work. The system will have a hydraulic operation sound when working, which is normal. When the ESP fails, the HDC function cannot be turned on. Please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

### WARNING

The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.

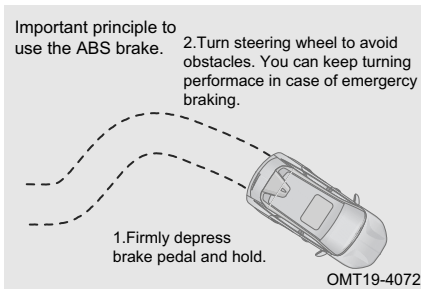
### Hill Descent Control (HDC) System indicator

When it is activated, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

### Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS can prevent wheel from locking in excessive braking or braking on a slippery road, preventing vehicle from slipping or drifting and maintaining stability of vehicle.



ABS does not function during normal braking and it will be turned on immediately only during emergency braking (brake pedal pulsates with noise, ensuring braking performance and steering performance, if there's enough space, the vehicle can also avoid obstacles). Never release brake pedal in this case.



**⚠ WARNING**

- Always drive carefully and make sure to decelerate during turning.
- When ABS is malfunctioning, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Although ABS can ensure the best braking effect, braking distance will vary largely due to road conditions.
- Also, ABS cannot eliminate risks arising from close-following driving, driving through water, turning quickly or driving on poor road surfaces and cannot avoid accidents caused by inattentive or inappropriate driving.
- ABS cannot ensure that braking distance can be shortened in any situations. When vehicle is equipped with tyre chains, on sand or snow covered roads, vehicles with ABS may require a longer braking distance than vehicles without ABS.

**Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) indicator**

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

**⚠ WARNING**

When ABS malfunction indicator and brake system malfunction indicator remain on at the same time, park your vehicle in a safety place far away from major traffic and contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

**Function limit**

■ ABS will make operation sound in following conditions:

1. Rebounding sound of brake pedal.
2. Impacting sound between suspension and vehicle body due to emergency braking.
3. Operation sound of motor, solenoid valve and return pump in hydraulic unit.
4. Operation sound of corresponding solenoid valve when EBD is intervened in braking.
5. Buzz will be heard for a short time after vehicle is powered on, indicating system self-test is performed.

■ Always maintain a safe distance from vehicle ahead in the following situations:

1. When driving on rough roads.
2. When driving on roads with potholes or uneven surfaces.
3. When driving with tyre chains.
4. When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

### CAUTION

Tyre size, specification and tread pattern wear will seriously affect ABS performance. Replacement tyres should have same size, load capacity and structure as original one. When a tyre is faulty, it is recommended to replace with an original brand at a authorized service centre.

### WARNING

- When driving on rainy days, properly control the vehicle speed, because if the wheel spins or slips, ABS cannot control the vehicle.
- Although ABS can help to control vehicle, make sure to drive carefully, maintain a moderate speed and keep a safe distance from preceding vehicles. There are certain limitations in vehicle stability and steering wheel operation efficiency even if ABS operates.

### Extended Function

#### **Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system**

EBD automatically adjusts braking force distribution ratio of front and rear axles according to axial load transfer difference caused by braking to improve braking efficiency. In addition, EBD works together with ABS to improve braking stability. Also, when braking in curve, brake force of inside and outside wheel can be adjusted to improve braking stability.

#### **Roll Stability Control system (RSC)**

RSC system is used to prevent vehicle from rolling over on road when operating vehicle in dynamic (such as lane change) state.

#### **Traction Control System (TCS)**

During starting off or rapidly acceleration, TCS may cause the driving wheels to slip. In the case of a slippery road such as snowy or icy road, directionally could get out of control and cause a dangerous situation. When TCS detects that driven wheel speed is lower than drive wheel speed (a kind of wheel slip symptom) using sensor, it sends a signal to adjust ignition timing, reduce throttle opening, downshift or brake wheels so that wheel no longer slips.

#### **Hill Hold Control (HHC) system**

HHC system can prevent vehicle from moving backward when starting off on uphill. After vehicle is stationary, HHC adopts longitudinal acceleration sensor to determine if the vehicle is on a slope. When vehicle starts from stationary state on a slope to drive or reverse upwards, HHC automatically operates. When starting off, after driver releases brake pedal, system maintains previous braking pressure for 1-2 seconds to hold the vehicle. As increasing of drive torque, brake pressure reduces gradually, avoiding accidents caused by moving backward when starting off on a slope.

### **Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) System**

EBA system is used to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this case, EBA system will operate: When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, EBA system quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock brake system brake more quickly and effectively.

### **Brake Override System (BOS)**

When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the drive motor output may be restrained.

### **Brake Assist System (BAS)**

BAS system is used to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this case, BAS system will operate. When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, BAS system quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock brake system shorten braking distance more quickly and effectively.

## **6-11. Data Privacy**

Chery Automobile Co., Ltd.(hereinafter referred to as "we" or "us") is the entity responsible for personal data processing activities related to your vehicle. We are a private company with limited liability established under the law of the Netherlands, with our statutory seat located at No.8 Changchun Road, Economic and Technological Development Zone, 241006, Wuhu, Anhui Province, P.R. China.

### **Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW)**

Our vehicle's Driver Drowsiness Alert Warning (DDAW) system works to detect signs of driver fatigue. It does this by monitoring a range of parameters within a recent time window, including the proportion of time your eyes are open, blink rate, direction of gaze, length of gaze, yawning, as well as vehicular parameters such as speed, gear position, car door status, steering wheel angle, and direction of turn. The system uses this information to make a comprehensive judgement about driver fatigue and issue alerts as necessary.

## 6. ASSIST DRIVING

### CAUTION

Please be aware that the data collected by the DDAW system is required by regulations, collected for immediate processing, and is not stored. According to the regulations, DDAW will be enabled by default. The collected data is used for algorithmic recognition and discarded immediately after use. All data is processed within the vehicle and does not leave the vehicle.

### Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)

---

In order to implement the drive assistance function, the car side will use the vehicle's front, flanks, and rear cameras to collect image data on the road during driving or after parking, image data surrounding the vehicle to complete drive assistance function. The camera recordings use the vehicle's external cameras to learn how to recognize things like lane lines, street signs and parking signs and traffic light.

### CAUTION

Please be aware that the processing data within our system is designed for immediate use and analysis. We do not store any of the data that is processed. This data is necessary for legitimate interests and also to fulfil legal and other official requirements.

### Emergency call (eCall)

---

In the event when you are in a traffic accident or you press the SOS button for roadside assistance, the eCall system on the in-vehicle terminal will provide your vehicle location, contact information and additional required information to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) which is set up by government authority. The collection and sharing of these data comply with the requirements of laws and regulations, which only includes GPS, speed, directions of your vehicle, the time when you trigger the eCall, the eCall status, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), vehicle model, power type and Recorded voice data.

### CAUTION

We collect this data to fulfil our legal obligations outlined in vehicle security regulations.

|  |                               |     |
|--|-------------------------------|-----|
| 7-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle<br>Emergency                   | Weight Limit .....            | 212 |
| Power battery .....  | Towing Hook.....              | 213 |
| Emergency Call<br>Function .....                               | Tyre .....                    | 216 |
| 202  | Safety Chain.....             | 216 |
| Hazard Light.....  | Towing Light.....             | 216 |
| 203  | Trailer Brake.....            | 216 |
| Reflective Vest.....   | Impact on Mileage.....        | 216 |
| 203  | Towing Hint .....             | 217 |
| Warning Triangle.....  | Towing Vehicle.....           | 218 |
| 204  | Installing Towing Eyelet..... | 219 |
| Spare Tools .....  |                               |     |
| 204  |                               |     |
| Jack label.....  |                               |     |
| 204  |                               |     |
| 7-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling                                | 7-4. Fuse                     |     |
| If You Have a Flat Tyre<br>While Driving (Spare<br>Tyre) ..... | Fuse Box .....                | 220 |
| 205  | Checking Fuse.....            | 221 |
| If Battery is Depleted .....                                   | Replacing Fuse.....           | 221 |
| 209  |                               |     |
| 7-3. Towing  |                               |     |
| Towing.....  |                               |     |
| 211  |                               |     |

## 7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

### 7-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

#### Power battery

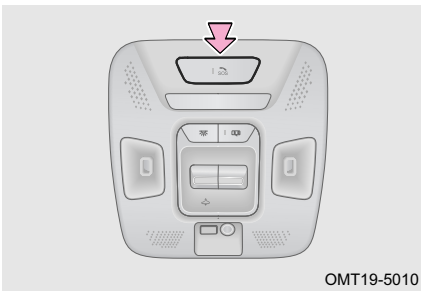
When power battery of vehicle touches the ground, vehicle has collided or soaked in water, or power battery case and connector are deformed or cracked seriously, or serious malfunction warning signal (such as battery over voltage, over temperature, poor insulation, thermal runaway alarm and charging socket over temperature) are displayed on instrument cluster, please contact the service station for inspection and repair immediately.

When power battery is low, low power battery warning light on instrument cluster will come on, reminding driver to charge it as soon as possible. In normal condition, reduce vehicle speed when warning light comes on, and drive the vehicle to charging station nearby at a speed of less than 24 mph (40 km/h). To protect the power battery, the vehicle can normally drive about 6 mile (10 km) to 12 mile (20 km) before high voltage system is disconnected automatically by the system.

Continuing to use under the above conditions may cause vehicle to lose power or other safety risks, please contact the local service station for inspection and repair immediately.

#### Emergency Call Function

##### ECALL

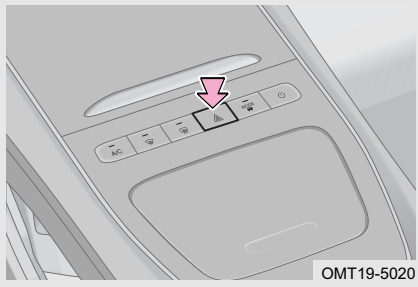


ECALL is a kind of emergency call function. When vehicle is involved in a certain level of impact (airbag inflated) or when driver or passenger is in an emergency and rescue is required, emergency information can be sent to service center by operating button manually, then the center will track vehicle location and promptly offer rescue according to received information.

##### READ

- In order to ensure vehicle emergency rescue function works properly, focus on and renew the subscription as required.
- When vehicle enters underground garage or travels on roads under intense electromagnetic interference (signal may be relatively poor), the function may not operate properly.

## Hazard Light



Press hazard light switch, turn signal lights flash and the turn signal indicator on instrument cluster flashes at the same time; press the switch again, turn signal lights and indicator will turn off.

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., please turn on the hazard lights to warn other vehicles, so as to avoid the secondary accident.

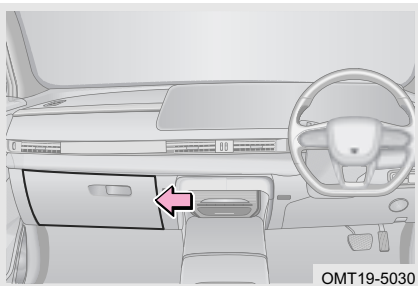
### READ

- The hazard lights are automatically activated when the airbag is operating.
- The hazard lights can still work when the vehicle power is turned to OFF mode.

## Emergency braking alarm function

When brake pedal is depressed in emergency at higher speed, the turn signal lights and turn signal indicator on instrument cluster flash quickly; Release the brake pedal, press the hazard light switch or turn the vehicle power to OFF mode, the turn signal lights and turn signal indicator on instrument cluster will stop flashing.

## Reflective Vest

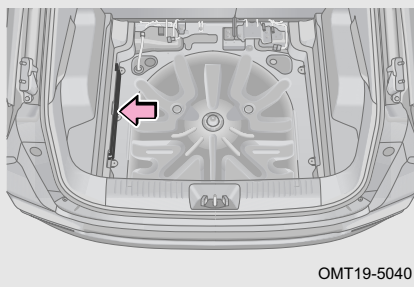


The reflective vest is placed in the glove box.

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., wear the reflective vest with reflective strip facing outwards. It can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

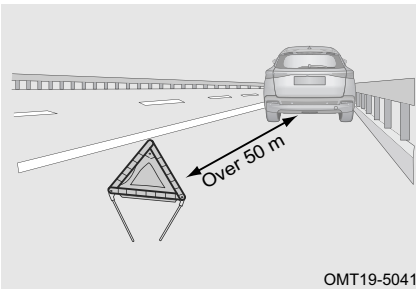
## 7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

### Warning Triangle



Warning triangle is located under the luggage compartment carpet.

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., the reflective performance of warning triangle can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

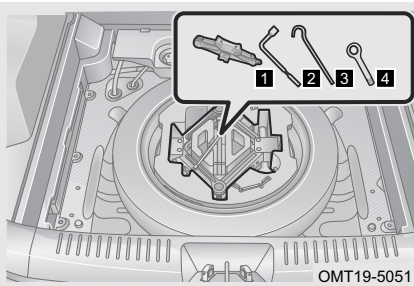


On a normal road, place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 50m behind the vehicle.

On the highway, place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 150m behind the vehicle.

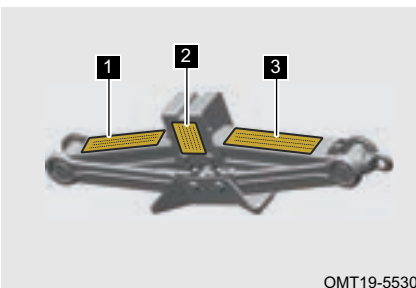
In rain or when steering, place the warning triangle at a distance of over 150m behind the vehicle.

### Spare Tools



- 1 Jack
- 2 Wheel bolt wrench
- 3 Jack rocker
- 4 Towing eyelet

### Jack label



Jack label as shown.

- 1 Rotate handle to raise or lower. Follow jacking instructions in owner's manual.
- 2 This jack is suitable for the model.
- 3 Warning: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



## 7-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

**If You Have a Flat Tyre While Driving (Spare Tyre)**

If a tyre goes flat during driving, slow down gradually, grip the steering wheel with two hands and keep driving straightly. Stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.

1. Preparations before replacing flat tyre.

Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply the parking brake and shift the shift lever P;

Step 3: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and turn on hazard lights;

Step 4: Have everyone get out of vehicle, pull over and stay away from traffic;

Step 5: Wear reflective vest, and place the warning triangle at a distance of 50 m - 150 m behind the vehicle (depending on actual condition).

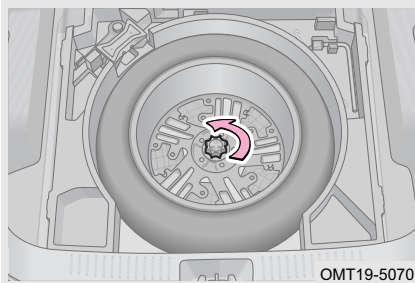
 CAUTION

Do not continue driving with a flat tyre. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre beyond repair.

 READ

The vehicle is equipped with full size spare tyre or non-full size spare tyre, the replacement method for both tyres is the same.

2. Take out the spare tyre.

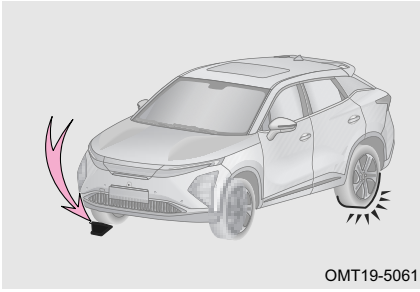


Step 1: Open boot door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out spare tools;

Step 2: Rotate fixing device of spare tyre counterclockwise to remove it, and then take out spare tyre.

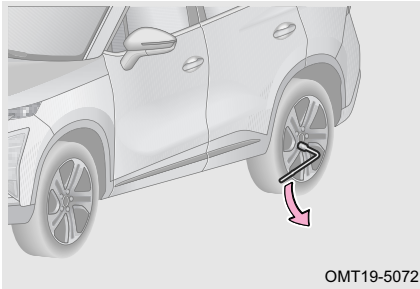
3. Remove the flat tyre.

## 7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



Step 1: Put a block under the tyre diagonally opposite to flat tyre to prevent vehicle from rolling;

| Flat Tire         | Wheel Block Position       |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| Front left wheel  | Behind rear right wheel    |
| Front right wheel | Behind rear left wheel     |
| Rear left wheel   | Front of front right wheel |
| Rear right wheel  | Rear right wheel           |



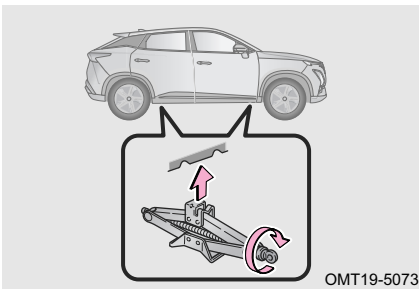
Step 2: Fit wheel bolt wrench to wheel bolt of flat tyre, set the handle on left side, hold the end of wrench handle and push it downward, loosen each bolt of flat tyre about one-half turn;

### ⚠ CAUTION

When removing wheel bolts with the wrench, be careful not to drop them as they can be damaged easily.

### ⚠ WARNING

Do not remove the bolts completely. Otherwise, wheel may drop off because of the vehicle pressure, causing personal injury.



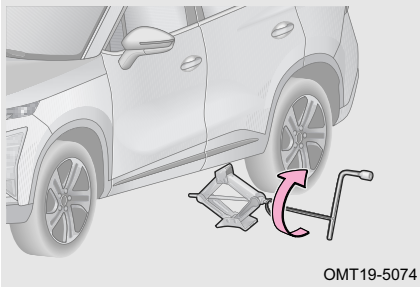
Step 3: Place jack on firm and level ground, turn jack handle clockwise by hand, making the notch of jack contact with the correct jacking-up point.

### 📖 READ

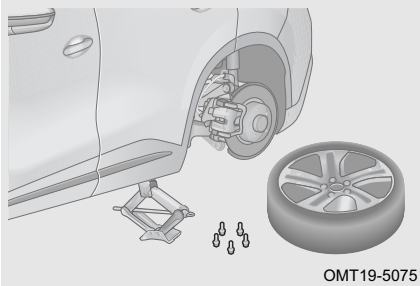
- Jack rated load: 800 kg.
- Jack the vehicle to a proper height at which tyre can be replaced.

### WARNING

Never put any part of body under the vehicle when vehicle is jacked up to avoid personal injury.



Step 4: When the notch of jack contacts correct jacking-up point, fit jack rocker into jack, and then fit wheel bolt wrench into jack rocker, and turn the wheel bolt wrench clockwise to jack up the vehicle.

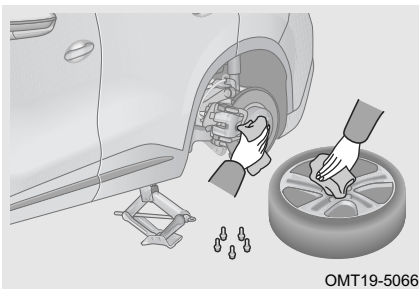


Step 5: Remove the wheel bolts of flat tyre counterclockwise with the wheel bolt wrench, and remove the flat tyre.

### CAUTION

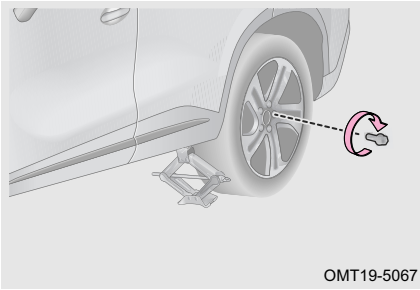
Place the flat tyre on ground with rim facing upward, avoid scratching the rim surface.

#### 4. Install the spare tyre.



Step 1: Remove any attachments from mounting surface. Make sure wheel hub contacts with wheel surface well and install spare tyre.

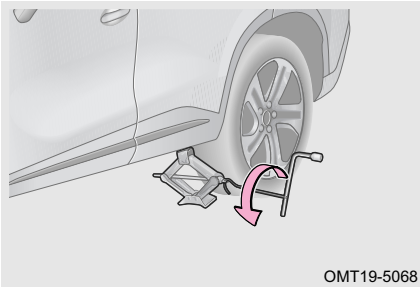
## 7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



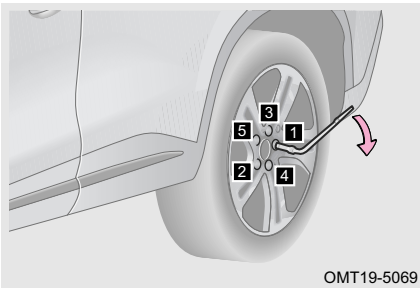
Step 2: When installing wheel bolts, screw into all wheel bolts clockwise by hand. Then straighten the spare tyre, and pretighten all wheel bolts with wheel bolt wrench.

### CAUTION

Do not apply oil or grease to wheel bolts.



Step 3: Make sure all persons around the vehicle stay in a safe area, fit jack rocker into jack, and wheel bolt wrench into jack rocker, and turn wheel bolt wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.



Step 4: Using wheel bolt wrench, tighten bolts in sequence shown in illustration. Repeat the process 2 to 3 times to ensure that wheel bolts are tightened in place.

Step 5: Stow the flat tyre and place jack, warning triangle and spare tools in original place.

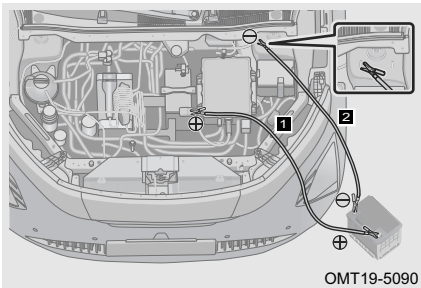
Step 6: When the spare tyre inflation pressure is insufficient, drive vehicle slowly to the nearest authorized service centre to inflate the tyre to correct pressure.

### READ

Electronic stability control system alarms abnormally after replacing with the non-full size spare tyre. After using the normal size tyre and driving for 0.6 mile (1 km), it will automatically return to normal.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Drive at specified speed of 49 mph (80 km/h) or less with a non-full size spare tyre, it is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.
- Tighten wheel bolts to  $130 \pm 10$  N·m after replacing the non-full size spare wheel. Drive slowly to the nearest authorized service centre (advised distance:  $\leq 49$  mph (80 km)) to replace with a standard tyre. Otherwise, the wheels may fall off due to loose bolts.
- The vehicle becomes lower when driving with non-full-size spare tyre compared to when driving with standard tyres. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.
- Spare tyre is designed only for emergency use and should be used only for very short periods. It should never be used for long drives or extended periods.
- Remember that the non-full-size spare tyre provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your spare tyre on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one spare tyres simultaneously.
- Replace the spare tyre with a standard tyre as soon as possible.

**If Battery is Depleted****Jump-starting**

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and connect jumper cables;

- 1** Connect one end of positive cable to positive terminal (+) of battery on discharged vehicle, and the other end to the positive terminal (+) of battery on rescue vehicle.
- 2** Connect one end of negative cable to negative terminal (-) of battery on rescue vehicle, and the other end to unpainted metal part on discharged vehicle.

Step 2: Verify that the jumper cable does not interfere with the moving parts of the vehicle.

Note: Jump starting is only used to models with battery (12 V).

## 7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

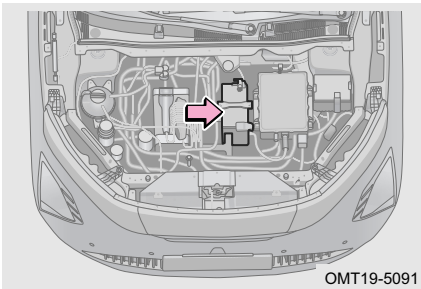
### CAUTION

- If the battery has lack of power frequently, please go to authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- The negative terminal of battery on rescue vehicle should not be directly connected to negative terminal of battery on discharged vehicle.
- Do not jump start unless you are sure that the battery voltage for jump starting is 12 - 13 V.
- When connecting and removing jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in fan, belt, etc.
- Ensure that the jumper cables are properly connected and keep a certain distance between terminals, to prevent the jumper cables from touching each other or touching other metal parts of the vehicle.

### WARNING

- The specified jumper cables should be used.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or open flames near the battery.
- If you are unsure about how to follow the procedure, strongly recommend that you seek help from professional serviceman or at a authorized service centre.

### Replacing battery



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode;

Step 2: Open the front compartment cover;

Step 3: Remove the negative (-) battery terminal cable;

Step 4: Remove the positive (+) battery terminal cable;

Step 5: Remove the battery protective sleeve;

Step 6: Remove the battery holder and the battery;

Step 7: Install a new battery that has the same specification as the used one;

Step 8: Install the new battery properly in the reverse order of removal.

Note: Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance free battery. The new battery should have the same specifications with the genuine one during replacement. We recommend that you should go to authorized service centre for battery replacement.

 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Battery contains acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Please deal with it according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

 CAUTION

While removing battery, be careful to avoid the metal tool contacting both battery terminals or touching the positive (+) battery terminal and body at the same time.

 WARNING

- Do not leave battery within the reach of children.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or open flames near the battery.
- Always wear gloves and safety glasses during operation, as battery contains acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Do not lean on the battery.
- If acid spills on your skin or clothes, the liquid must be neutralized with alkaline water (such as: soap water) immediately, and then wash it with clean water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

## 7-3. Towing

## Towing

Follow instructions to tow the vehicle. Driver and passenger safety depends on proper equipment and safe driving habits. Towing will affect handling, braking, durability, performance and economy.

Do not overload vehicle or trailer. For details, please consult a maintenance professional.

 CAUTION

- Do not tow a trailer for the first 600 miles (1,000 km ) of your vehicle. Failure to do so will damage drive motor, transmission, differential, wheel bearing and other power system components.
- Damage caused by towing trailer is not covered by the warranty.

 READ

When towing a trailer, do not use the following safety systems (these may automatically turn off if original trailer hook is used):

- Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system
- Parking assist system (rear)

## 7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

### READ

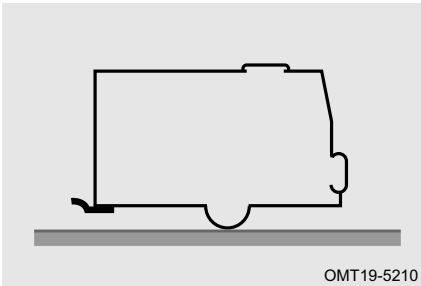
When towing a trailer, do not use the following safety systems (these may automatically turn off if original trailer hook is used):

- Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system
- Parking assist system (rear)

### Weight Limit

The total weight of trailer, the total weight of the vehicle and the weight of trailer head must be within the limits specified in towing load table of trailer.

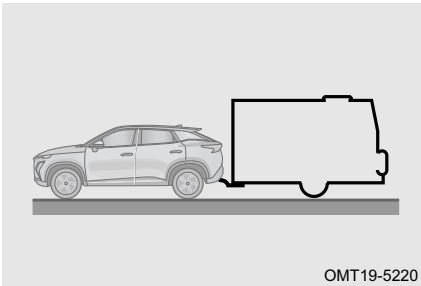
#### ■ Total weight of trailer:



OMT19-5210

The sum of trailer and its load weight.

#### ■ Total weight of vehicle:

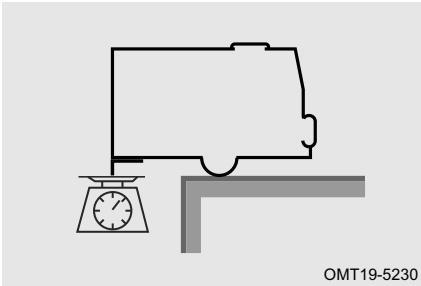


OMT19-5220

The total weight of trailer and towing vehicle includes trailer hook, vehicle passenger, and vehicle load.



### ■ Weight of trailer head:



The weight applied to trailer tongue. Change the weight by changing weight distribution when loading trailer.

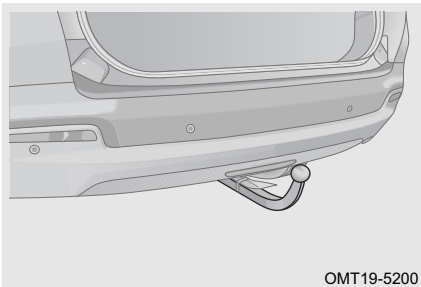
### ⚠ CAUTION

Be aware of the weight difference in towing load when towing at high altitudes. At altitudes above 1,000 m, it is important to reduce the towing load by 10% under total weight heading in the maximum trailer towing load table for every 1,000 m increase in height. If the specified maximum total towing weight is exceeded, drive motor and other power system components may be damaged.

### Towing Hook

Use a suitable towing hook when towing a trailer. It is recommended to use the original towing hook. To ensure a smooth tow, the original hole drilled by vehicle manufacturer is used. For more information, please consult a maintenance professional.

### Trailer hook mounting point



- 1: Vertical load: maximum 75kg
- 2: Maximum allowable rear overhang: 958mm

### ⚠ CAUTION

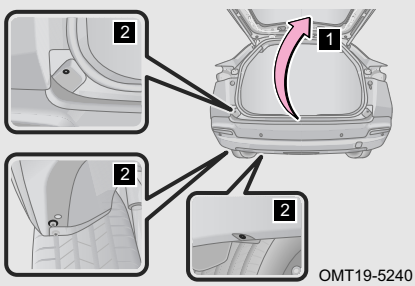
When towing, be sure to attach safety chains. The chain passes under the trailer tow frame and is attached to the trailer hole to ensure the safe loading of the trailer.

## 7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

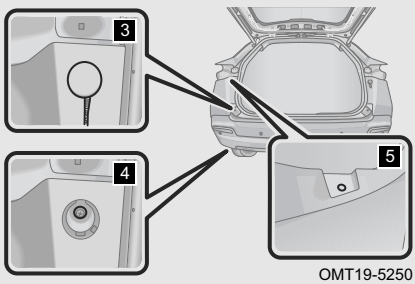
### WARNING

When towing, be sure to attach safety chains. The chain passes under the trailer tow frame and is attached to the trailer hole to ensure the safe loading of the trailer.

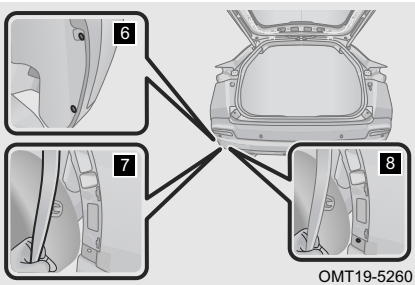
### Installation of trailer hook



1. Open the tailgate.
2. Unscrew 6 positions pointed by arrow.

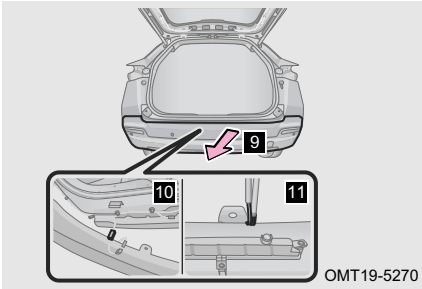


3. Open the cap (L&R).
4. Unscrew (L&R).
5. Unscrew (L&R).

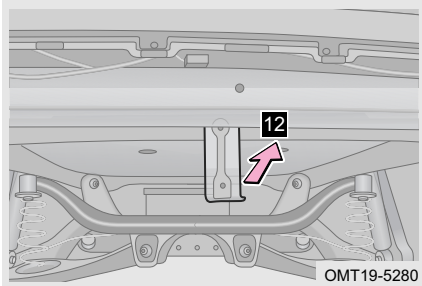


6. Unscrew 2 position on wheel edge trim (L&R).
7. Unscrew (L&R).
8. Disassemble (L&R).

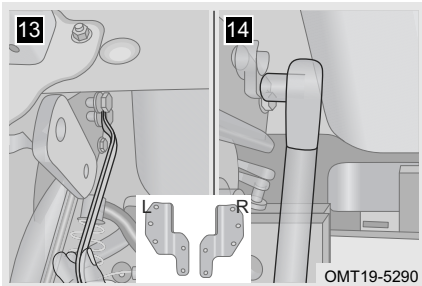
## 7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



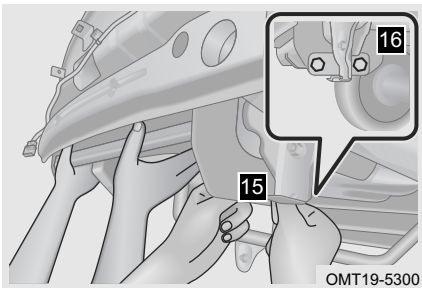
9. Disassemble rear bumper.
10. Release the plug.
11. Cut the center plastic fixed point.



12. Bend the bracket.



13. Fasten to enough depth by simple curved wrench.
14. Fasten to the standard torque by special adapter.



15. Hold up the hook, and plug the bolts.
16. Fasten to the standard torque.

## 7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

### Tyre

When towing a trailer, make sure that all tyres are inflated to the recommended cold tyre pressure as shown in tyre pressure figure on driver side door frame. Trailer tyre size, rated load and inflation pressure should comply with specifications of tyre manufacturer.

#### WARNING

Do not use a temporary spare tyre during towing Because it can cause tyre failure, loss of control, and injury to the occupants in the vehicle.

### Safety Chain

If the trailer pulls away unexpectedly, a safety chain must be used as a precaution. It should pass under trailer tongue and be secured to the hook. Allow enough slack for the vehicle to turn completely.

#### WARNING

Before driving, make sure that the safety chain is securely attached to trailer and the vehicle. Towing is dangerous when safety chain is not securely attached to trailer and the vehicle. If coupler or hook ball is damaged, the trailer may move into the other lane and cause a collision.

### Towing Light

Do not automatically connect the trailer lighting system directly to lighting system on the vehicle. This can damage electrical system and lighting system. Please consult a maintenance professional to connect lighting system.

### Trailer Brake

Check the maximum weight limit specified by towing load table, if trailer weight exceeds the total weight of trailer (trailer without brake), trailer brake is required. If the trailer is equipped with brake, make sure that it meets specifications.

#### WARNING

Do not connect hydraulic trailer brake system to brake system of the vehicle. Connecting hydraulic trailer brake system directly to brake system of the vehicle is dangerous and can result in insufficient braking or even personal injury.

### Impact on Mileage

Towing trailer will add weight and drag to the towing vehicle. As a result, mileage will be drastically reduced. Although trip planning function adjusts

estimates based on towing mode, the actual energy consumption will still vary. Therefore, distance and charging destination need to be planned accordingly.

### Towing Hint

#### Before driving

- Make sure that your vehicle is in near normal condition when connecting a loaded or empty trailer. Do not drive the vehicle if the front position of the vehicle is abnormally tilted up or down. Check if the front weight of the vehicle is correct, suspension parts are worn, and the trailer is overloaded. Contact professional maintenance personnel to check the vehicle.
- Make sure that trailer cargo is secured to prevent movement.
- Make sure that rear view mirrors comply with all national regulations. Check it out.
- Before driving, check the operations of vehicle and trailer towing and connection between vehicle and trailer. After driving a short distance, stop the vehicle and check all lights and connections.

#### Driving

- Vehicle handling varies depending on the type of trailer being towed, so practice turning, reversing, and stopping in areas with smooth traffic.
- Take some time to get used to extra weight and length.
- Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) when towing the trailer. If the maximum speed for a towing trailer is less than 60 mph (100 km/h) by local law, do not exceed the specified speed.

#### CAUTION

If speed of the vehicle that tows trailer exceeds 60 mph (100 km/h), the vehicle may be damaged.

- Shift to a low gear when going uphill to reduce the possibility of overloading and overheating of drive motor.
- When going downhill, always pay attention to the speed, and use brake if necessary. Depressing brake pedal for a long time may cause the brake to overheat and lose power.

#### Parking

Avoid parking a vehicle with a trailer on a slope. Otherwise, follow the instructions below.

##### ■ Parking on a slope

1. Apply parking brake and brake.
2. Check if someone is blocking wheels of the vehicle and trailer when applying braking.

## 7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

3. After blocking wheels, slowly release parking brake and brake so that the wood block bears the load.
4. Firmly apply the parking brake.
5. Shift the shift lever to P position.

### ■ Starting on a slope

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Release parking brake and slowly pull away from wheel block for a short distance.
3. Park the vehicle on the nearest level, apply parking brake, and lift wheel block.

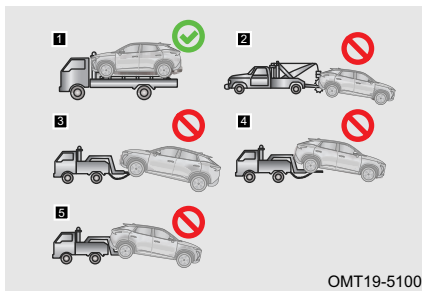
### Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact the authorized service centre or professional towing service department, or to seek help from the organization that provides roadside assistance services that you belong to.

#### WARNING

- Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty.
- To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly.
- Do not allow other vehicles to pull your vehicle with only rope or iron chain.

### Using flatbed trailer



Please use ① flatbed rescue vehicle to load the vehicle

Precautions for vehicle traction are as follows:

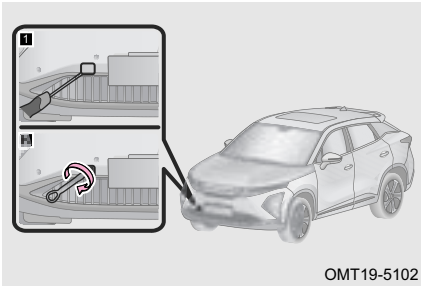
- Use the traction mode with four-wheel off-the-ground, do not use traction modes of ②, ③, ④ and ⑤ in the illustration.
- Turn the shift position to N, turn on the hazard warning light and close the door before towing.
- Never ride in the accident vehicle during towing.

#### CAUTION

Never transfer the vehicle with forklift after the vehicle breaks down.

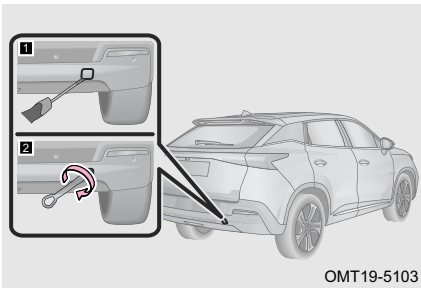
**⚠ WARNING**

- No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the flatbed rescue vehicle, failure to do so may cause personal injury or even death.
- The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., first solve the safety risk.

**Installing Towing Eyelet****Front towing eyelet**

Step 1: Use a flat head screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the front towing eyelet hole cover;

Step 2: Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

**Rear towing eyelet**

Step 1: Use a flat head screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the rear towing eyelet hole cover;

Step 2: Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Only use specified towing eyelet. Otherwise, vehicle may be damaged.
- Drive the vehicle slowly and smoothly when towing. Impact due to excessive tension may damage the vehicle.
- Towing rope or towing bar can be installed only when towing eyelet is installed in place.

**⚠ WARNING**

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely. Otherwise, the towing eyelet may come loose when towing, which may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

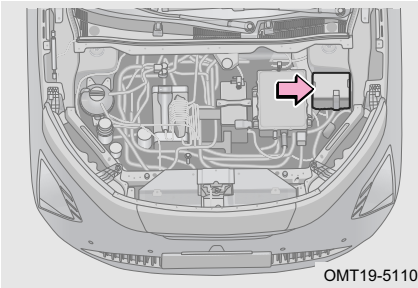
## 7. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

### 7-4. Fuse

#### Fuse Box

Fuses are used to protect electrical components and circuits to avoid short circuit or overload. If fuse is blown, the protected components and systems will not work properly.

#### Front compartment fuse box

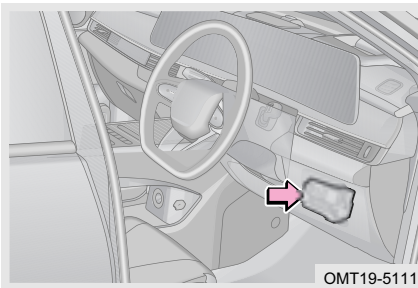


Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode;

Step 2: Disconnect the negative battery terminal cable;

Step 3: Remove front compartment fuse box cover to inspect or replace fuse.

#### Instrument panel fuse box



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode;

Step 2: Disconnect the negative battery terminal cable;

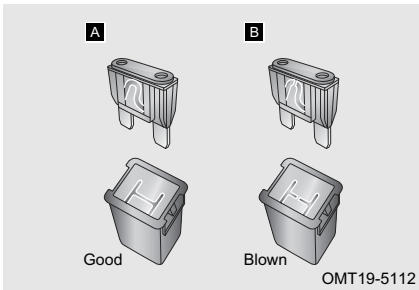
Step 3: Remove instrument panel lower right protector to inspect or replace fuse.

#### READ

- Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay layout.
- The fuse box must be clean, keep it away from dampness when opening, as moisture may damage the electrical system.
- To prevent damage, be careful when removing/installing the instrument panel lower left protector. Please contact authorized service centre as necessary.



## Checking Fuse



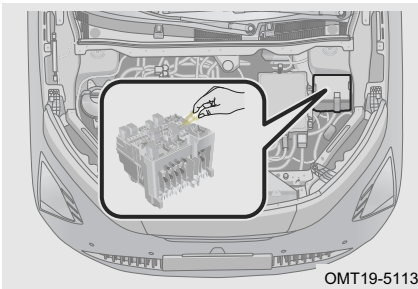
**A** Good fuse.

**B** Blown fuse.

### READ

If the fuses are blown, they must be replaced.

## Replacing Fuse



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode;

Step 2: Check fuses according to the fuse and relay layout;

Step 3: Pull the suspected fuse out by a fuse remover;

Step 4: Check if the fuse is blown. If you are not sure whether the fuse has blown, replace the suspected fuse with spare fuse that has the same amperage rating. You can see the amperage rating on the schematic diagram inside the fuse box cover.

### READ

If the spare fuse is unavailable, you can use a fuse with same specification from other unimportant electrical appliances in case of emergency. It is better to purchase a set of spare fuses and put them in vehicle for emergency use.

### CAUTION

- Do not modify fuse or fuse box.
- Only install a fuse that has the same amperage rating as used one. Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary replacement. Otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.



|                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>8-1. Repair and Maintenance</b> | <b>Normal Maintenance .....</b> 228 |
| Repair and Maintenance ... 224     | Checking reducer oil..... 229       |
| authorized service centre          | Checking Brake Fluid                |
| is at Your Service ..... 224       | Level..... 229                      |
| Reading Vehicle                    | Checking Coolant Level .... 229     |
| Identification Code                | Checking Tyres..... 230             |
| Information..... 225               | Tyre Rotation..... 232              |
| Safety Check..... 225              | Checking Air                        |
| <b>8-2. Normal Maintenance</b>     | Conditioning Filter ..... 232       |
| Normal Maintenance ..... 226       | Checking Windshield                 |
| Vehicle Storage ..... 227          | Washer Fluid ..... 233              |
| Service and Maintenance            | Checking Wiper Blades..... 233      |
| of Power Battery ..... 227         | <b>8-3. Regular Maintenance</b>     |
| Service and Maintenance            | Regular Maintenance..... 234        |
| of Battery ..... 228               |                                     |

## 8. MAINTENANCE

### 8-1. Repair and Maintenance

#### Repair and Maintenance

---

There are two types of repair and maintenance: one is normal maintenance, which can be done by the customers; the other is scheduled maintenance, inspection and repair, which needs to be completed by authorized service centre.

For the details of regular maintenance, inspection and repair methods, please refer to "Regular Maintenance" in this section; Regular maintenance can be helpful for you to find and eliminate potential dangers in time to prevent malfunctions. Scheduled maintenance of your vehicle is essential. Please strictly follow the maintenance schedule of "User Manual" to perform maintenance, ensuring that your vehicle maintains the best performance and good operating conditions, thus effectively extending the service life of the vehicle.

Please use the recommended fluid, or your vehicle may be damaged.

authorized service centre is at Your Service

---

#### authorized service centre

Only OEM parts and materials can extend your vehicle's service life. We only supplies OEM parts to authorized service centre located worldwide. Therefore, only OEM parts from authorized service centre can be used.

authorized service centre offers a professional service. For vehicle service, please remember that your authorized service centre knows your vehicle best, and has the professional technicians and OEM parts to complete the job to the highest standard.

#### ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used Reducer Oil, brake fluid, coolant, steering fluid (if equipped), batteries and tyres should only be disposed of by qualified waste disposal agencies or after consultation with manufacturers, and should not be taken out with household waste or disposed of into the communal drainage system.

#### Service arrangements

When going to authorized service centre for vehicle service, make sure to carry all required documents. Not all the work to be performed is covered by the warranty. For detailed expenses, consult your service advisor. Keep a service record on your vehicle. Usually, this record can provide valuable reference information.

Prepare a list sheet covering vehicle malfunctions and specific service items. If you have had an accident or any item serviced is not included in the service records, let your service advisor know.

If you list many service items and you must collect your vehicle on the same day, communicate with your advisor to rank the items by priority.

### Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information

The vehicle Identification code information can be readout by installing the malfunction diagnosis device, used for inspections and maintenance.

Do not install electrical components other than the diagnosis device to the connector. Doing so may cause unexpected problems to occur, such as having a bad effect on electronics or damaging the battery.

### Safety Check

It is better to perform a safety check before driving vehicle, which will improve your driving safety and enjoyment.

#### WARNING

While inspecting vehicle, do not start the vehicle.

#### Daily check

Check whether paint surface is scratched, light shade is damaged, body is tilted, wheel bolts are missed or loosened, water/oil leakage of chassis occurs, door/bonnet/boot door/glass is damaged.

Check that reducer oil level, brake fluid level, coolant level, steering fluid level (if equipped) and windshield washer fluid level is normal.

Check cold tyre pressure and conditions (such as: wear, swelling, aging cracks, mechanical damages, etc). Also check the spare tyre.

Check whether seat belt buckles fasten securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.

Check whether lighting of lights is normal.

Check whether meter indicators are normal.

#### Monthly check

Clean vehicle surface, inside of front compartment cover (dust on surface of radiator and condenser), vehicle interior and luggage compartment.

Check assembly, pipes, hoses and tanks for leaks; Check whether battery and cable are corroded and loosened; Check whether circuits are damaged, loosened or disconnected; Check that no water/oil leakage has occurred.

Check whether air condition is operating properly.

Check whether parking brake is operating properly.

Check whether spare fuses and spare tools (such as: jack, wheel bolt wrench, etc.) are equipped.

## 8. MAINTENANCE

### READ

Used reducer oil, brake fluid, coolant, batteries and tyres can be disposed only by qualified waste disposal agencies, or consult supporting manufacturers for disposal of them. It is not permitted to dispose of them with household waste or discharge them into public drainage system.

### 8-2. Normal Maintenance

#### Normal Maintenance

Normal maintenance refers to simple maintenance that can be done by the customer. If you do it by yourself, please be sure to follow the proper maintenance procedures in this section.

This section only lists the simple maintenance instructions. However, there are still many items that have to be maintained by qualified technicians with special tools at authorized service centre. Please contact authorized service centre when necessary.

### ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used reducer oil, brake fluid, coolant, steering fluid (if equipped), batteries and tyres should only be disposed of by qualified waste disposal agencies or after consultation with manufacturers, and should not be taken out with household waste or disposed of into the communal drainage system.

### CAUTION

- Check for any tools or cloths that may have been left behind before closing the bonnet.
- Do not drive vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, excessive drive motor wear may be caused.
- Correctly add fluid to the appropriate level. If some fluid splashes onto the vehicle body, be sure to immediately wash it off with a wet cloth, avoiding damaging painted surface.

**⚠ WARNING**

- If the drive motor is very hot, do not open the coolant reservoir cap to prevent scalding injury.
- When the drive motor is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from drive motor drive belts and cooling fan.
- Do not smoke near battery, otherwise, it may cause sparks or open flames, resulting in a fire.
- There is a high voltage in the electronic ignition system. Do not touch these components while the drive motor is running or the vehicle power is in ON mode.
- The vehicle that just stopped, drive motor, radiator, exhaust manifold and cylinder head will be very hot, so never touch them. Prevent any loose clothing from getting caught in the fan and causing personal injury because the cooling fan may automatically start and run at any time.

**Vehicle Storage**

Vehicles should be stored in a cool, ventilated, clean and dry environment. If the vehicle is parked in a closed and humid environment for a long period of time, it will accelerate the rusting and aging of vehicle parts. Please carry out regular maintenance on the vehicle in accordance with the recommendations and requirements in the instruction manual.

**Service and Maintenance of Power Battery**

The power battery is an important part of the vehicle, so please pay attention to the following matters and restrictions during use:

- Do not park the vehicle in excessively high or low temperatures.
- Do not park your vehicle in areas where there is a source of heat.
- Avoid prolonged parking and use the vehicle at least once a month.
- The power battery needs to be fully charged at least once a month to ensure the life of power battery.
- Vehicles need to be kept dry and avoid prolonged parking in wet conditions, such as waterlogged parking areas etc.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Non-professionals should not touch, move, or disassemble the power battery, the corresponding high voltage cables, or other parts with high voltage warning signs.
- When the vehicle or power battery is on fire, quickly move away from the vehicle to a safe distance and use a fire extinguisher designed for electric fires, as the use of water or an incorrect fire extinguisher may result in electric shock.

## 8. MAINTENANCE

### Service and Maintenance of Battery

---

The service life and function of the battery is affected by many factors, such as discharging, driving style, driving conditions, weather conditions, etc.

- If the vehicle is parked for a long time, disconnect negative battery cable after performing high voltage power-off, and charge the vehicle regularly, so that the vehicle power is maintained at 50% to 70%. It is recommended to check the power regularly and use the vehicle at least once a month.
- Check if the battery cables are properly connected and securely fastened.
- If the battery is fully discharged several times, its service life may be shortened. Keeping the low voltage battery fully charged will help prolong its life.

#### WARNING

- All battery work requires specialized knowledge. If you have any questions, please contact authorized service centre.
- Be careful not to expose eyes, skin, fabric, or painted surfaces to low voltage battery fluid. The low voltage battery contains sulfuric acid. In case of accidental contact, rinse with water immediately, and get emergency medical attention immediately.
- The battery can produce explosive and flammable gases, so smoking, open flames or sparklers are not allowed in the vicinity.
- Always wear eye protection and remove all jewelry when handling battery or working near low voltage battery.
- Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling the battery.
- Do not disconnect the vehicle battery after the vehicle has been started.

### Normal Maintenance

---

Be sure to follow the correct maintenance procedures given in this section if you perform do-it-yourself maintenance.

This section only lists the simple maintenance instructions which can be performed by users. However, there are still many items that have to be maintained by qualified technicians with special tools.

#### CAUTION

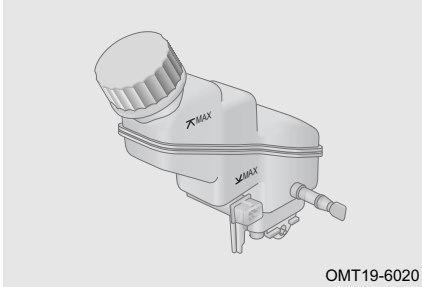
- Check for any tools or cloths that may have been left behind before closing the bonnet.
- Correctly add coolant, brake fluid, washer fluid to the appropriate level. If some fluid splashes onto the vehicle body, be sure to immediately wash it off with a wet cloth, avoiding damaging painted surface.



### Checking reducer oil

Checking, adding and replacing of reducer oil should be done by professionals. Please contact authorized service centre.

### Checking Brake Fluid Level



Brake fluid level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add brake fluid and contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair immediately.

#### CAUTION

- As the brake fluid is highly absorbent, do not leave the brake fluid reservoir cap open for a long period of time.
- Only recommended brake fluid can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer's own risk.
- If brake fluid splashes onto the painted surface of vehicle body, be sure to clean it with a wet sponge or wash it off with water to avoid corroding the parts or painted surface.

#### WARNING

Never allow brake fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If the brake fluid splashes into your eyes or on your skin, flush the area immediately with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

### Checking Coolant Level



The vehicle must park on a level ground when checking coolant level. Check whether coolant level in reservoir is between MAX and MIN lines. If coolant in reservoir is boiling, the operation can be performed after coolant is cooled. If coolant level is lower than MIN line, add coolant to coolant reservoir according to specified procedure.

## 8. MAINTENANCE

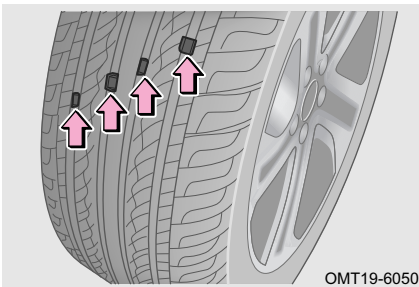
### CAUTION

- If coolant level falls rapidly, check radiator, water hose and water pump for leakage.
- Please use coolant recommended. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at user's own risk.
- Do not use poor quality coolant, because the drive motor generates high temperatures during operation. Inferior coolant cannot provide sufficient cooling and corrosion protection.
- To maximize the performance and life of the power battery, drive motor and air conditioning system, the cooling system should use a specific type of coolant (select a different freezing point depending on the lowest temperature in your region).

### WARNING

- Opening the expansion tank cover before the motor has cooled down completely may cause coolant to spray out, resulting in severe burns.
- To add coolant, open the bonnet first. Contact your authorized service centre if necessary to avoid personal injury from accidental contact with high voltage components.

## Checking Tyres



Check the tyre tread for tread wear mark. When tread wear reaches its limit, tread will be in the same plane as the wear band. If such condition occurs, it indicates that performance and safety of tyre seriously decrease, and replacement is necessary.

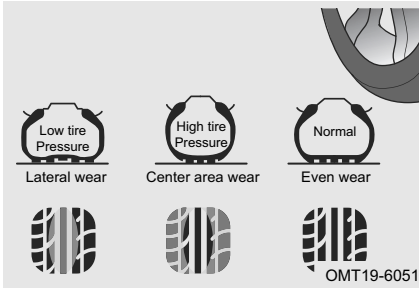
### ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Always discard a used tyre carefully. It should be handled according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

■ Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death:

1. Do not use tyres that were used on another vehicle.
2. Do not mix tyres with remarkably different tread wear.
3. Do not use tyres if you do not know how they were used previously.

4. Do not mix tyres from different manufacturers, of different models or tread patterns.
5. Do not mix differently constructed tyres (such as: radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tyres).
6. Speedometer is affected by tyre size. If the tyre size (diameter) is different from the genuine one, it will not display accurate speed, and may result in accidents, such accidents loss are not covered by the warranty.



Incorrect tyre inflation pressure will lead to excessive power consumption, shorten the tyre service life and reduce the vehicle stability. Therefore, you should drive the vehicle with proper tyre pressure (For provisions about the tyre inflation pressure, please refer to the tyre pressure label on driver side B pillar). When cold tyre inflation pressure is higher than specified value or economic tyre pressure is used, driving comfort will be reduced accordingly. Please adjust it according to your needs.

■ Be sure to keep proper tyre inflation pressure. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in death or serious injury:

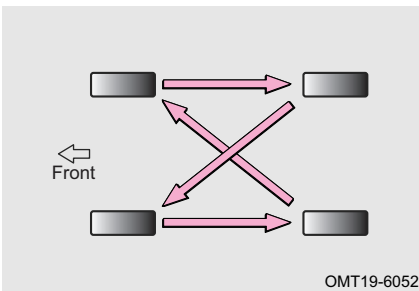
1. Excessive wear.
2. Poor handling.
3. Uneven wear.
4. Poor sealing of the tyre bead.
5. Wheel deformation or tyre separation.
6. Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tyres.
7. A greater possibility of tyre damage caused by poor road conditions.

## 8. MAINTENANCE

### CAUTION

- It is normal that the tyre inflation pressure increases after driving for a period of time.
- If the tyre needs to be inflated frequently, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If a tyre often leaks or cannot be properly repaired due to a cut or other damages, it should be replaced.
- Use a tyre pressure gauge to check cold tyre inflation pressure. Visual inspection of a tyre may cause inaccurate estimation on inflation pressure.
- If air leakage occurs while driving, do not continue to drive. Driving even a short distance can damage a tyre beyond repair.
- Be sure to install tyre valve caps properly. Otherwise, dirt could get into the valve core and cause blockage. If the caps are lost, install new ones as soon as possible.

### Tyre Rotation



To equalize tyre wear and extend tyre service life, we recommend that four tyres are rotated every 6,214 miles (10,000 km) (the best adjustment and rotation range is 3,107 - 4,349 miles (5,000 - 7,000 km)); the tyre rotation cycle may vary according to driver's driving habits and road surface conditions.

### READ

Tyre rotation should be performed by professionals, please contact authorized service centre.

### Checking Air Conditioning Filter

Air conditioning filter can prevent outside dust from entering vehicle through air conditioning outlets, and it may be blocked after being used for a long time. If efficiency of air conditioning decreases significantly, check filter and replace it as necessary.

### READ

- The replacement of air conditioning filter should be performed by professionals, please contact authorized service centre.
- Using air conditioning with filter removed may result in degradation of dustproof performance, affecting efficiency of air conditioning.

### Checking Windshield Washer Fluid

If no washer fluid is sprayed from washer nozzles, stop operating washers and check if it is necessary to add washer fluid. If it cannot operate properly after adding washer fluid, please contact authorized service centre for inspection and repair.

#### CAUTION

- Never add antifreeze in the windshield washer fluid, because antifreeze will damage the body painted surface.
- Do not use water as washer fluid when temperature is below zero. Otherwise, water will be frozen, causing damage to washer.
- The capacity of windshield washer fluid reservoir is 4.5 L; when the washer fluid level is low, it may set off an alarm, please refer to the actual vehicle.

### Checking Wiper Blades

Check the roughness of wiper blade by sliding on its edge using your finger. If it is too rough, the wiper blade will not work effectively.

#### CAUTION

- Do not use the wiper blades to remove frost or ice covered on the windshield.
- If there are any chips on the windscreen from gravel, please repair quickly.
- In winter, make sure that the wipers are not frozen to the glass before operating them to avoid damaging the wiper blades.
- Butter, silicone and fuel may cause the wiper blades to operate improperly, and it is recommended to clean the wiper blades with washer fluid.
- When the blades are lifted for maintenance, the center connector position of the blades should be properly picked up, it is required to enter maintenance mode for some models before lifting (for details, please refer to electronic manual "Wiper System").

### Maintaining Wiper Blades

1. Do not use high-pressure water jet to directly wash the wiper blades while washing the vehicle, otherwise the wiper blades could be deformed.
2. It is recommended to clean wiper blades using glass detergent regularly once a week.
3. For safety, it is recommended to replace the wiper blades 1 to 2 times a year, the wiper blades can be purchased at authorized service centre.
4. Apply pure water to rinse the windshield and blades after washing the vehicle in the automatic car washer, which can remove the remaining wax layer.

## 8. MAINTENANCE

5. Do not operate wiper blades when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch glass, resulting in permanent damage to wiper blades.
6. Do not clean the windshield with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar liquid, which can damage the wiper blades.
7. Avoid using glass plating agent and hydrophobic agent on the front and rear windshields. The hydrophobic layer will fall off slowly after using, resulting in uneven friction of windshield and abnormal noise of wiper shaking.
8. When the windshield surface is frosted or frozen, or when dry soil, insect, sticker residue or other solid particles are attached to the windshield surface, clean them with a wet cloth in time. Do not use a dry cloth or remove them with wiper blades directly, otherwise it will damage the windshield and wiper blades.

### Using Wipers

1. Do not swing the wiper arm manually, otherwise it may damage the wiper.
2. When there is snow, leaves, branch and other objects, they should be cleaned before operating the wiper.
3. Washer fluid should be added as soon as is needed, please use the windshield washer fluid as specified in this manual, and do not use tap water instead.
4. In cold weather, always check if the wiper blades are frozen on the windshield before using. If they are frozen on the windshield, always unfreeze them before using. Use air conditioning heating and ventilation device to warm up. Do not pour hot water directly to blades, otherwise, windshield may break or wiper blades may deform.

### 8-3. Regular Maintenance

#### Regular Maintenance

---

##### ■ Necessity of Maintenance

1. Routine care and regular maintenance are necessary to ensure that the vehicle works normally with good driving experience, efficiency and reliability, and to reduce possible maintenance costs.
2. For routine maintenance items specified in this manual that can be performed by the user, the user can perform routine maintenance according to the above instructions.
3. Considering the complexity of the vehicle's system and the strict after-sales service requirements for new energy vehicles under national laws and regulations, strongly recommended the users to complete the regular maintenance of the vehicle at the authorized service centre.
4. If you have any questions on how to perform maintenance, please contact authorized service centre directly.

### ■ Routine Maintenance

Routine maintenance is a very important measure to ensure driving safety and reduce vehicle failure. The users should check the following items before driving. If you find any abnormality, please contact the authorized service centre in time.

- Check all exterior lights, horn, indicator signal lights, hazard warning lights.
- Check the wiper and windshield washer.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check the seat belt.
- Check if there is any indicator in instrument cluster comes on abnormally.
- Check inflation of each tyre and if there is any damage and wear.
- Check the wiper washer fluid level and add if necessary.
- Check if each switch operates properly.
- Check the coolant level and add if necessary.

### ■ Precautions

- Keep the tyre pressure normal.
- When accelerating, depress the accelerator pedal as lightly as possible.
- Minimize the use of vehicle in hot or cold weather.
- Keep the vehicle moving at a constant speed and reduce rapid acceleration and braking.
- The actual driving mileage of vehicle decreases as the vehicle is used for longer periods of time.
- The actual driving range of vehicle decreases as the vehicle is used for longer periods of time.
- At high speed, close the windows to reduce air resistance and minimize power consumption.
- At extreme temperature and low battery power conditions, weak acceleration and lack of dynamic force may occur due to the characteristics of the power battery.
- If necessary, turn off high-power electrical appliances such as air conditioner or adjust the heating or cooling temperature to reduce the energy consumed by high-power electrical appliances and increase the driving range.
- Driving range is related to the depth of discharge. In order to avoid excessive discharging and affecting the performance of power battery, it is recommended that you should charge the battery when you notice the low battery warning light alarm in instrument cluster.





**9-1. Label Location**

Vehicle Identification  
 Number (VIN) ..... 238

Vehicle Product Label ..... 239

Front Drive Motor  
 Number ..... 239

**9-2. Vehicle Specifications**

Vehicle Dimensions ..... 240

Vehicle Type ..... 241

Vehicle Weight ..... 241

Vehicle Performance ..... 242

Drive Motor ..... 242

Power Battery ..... 243

Power Battery Cells ..... 243

**On-board Charger  
 Performance**

Parameters ..... 244

Suspension System ..... 244

Wheel Alignment ..... 244

Tyres ..... 245

Battery ..... 247

Light Bulb Specification ..... 247

Measurement Range of  
 Vehicle Overall Size  
 Excluding Following  
 Components ..... 248

Your Rights ..... 249

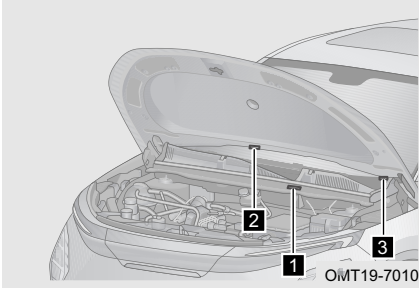
Contact Us ..... 249

## 9. SPECIFICATION

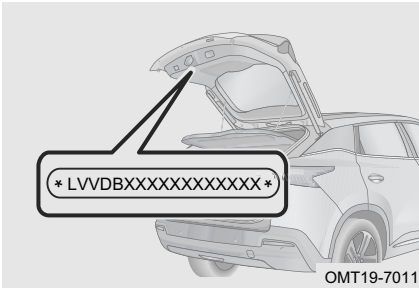
### 9-1. Label Location

#### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

#### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on actual vehicle



- 1** Vehicle identification number (VIN) is engraved on lower of front compartment drip channel garnish (as shown in the illustration).
- 2** Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label is located at the lower part of the front compartment cover (as shown in the illustration).
- 3** Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label is located on upper left of passenger side instrument panel (as shown in the illustration), and can be seen from the outside through the front windshield.



Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label is located on boot door.

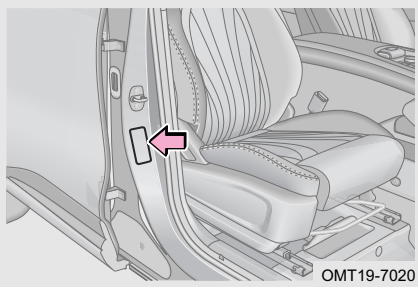
#### READ

- Due to regional differences, the location of VIN code shall be subject to the actual vehicle.
- It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and areas around it.

#### CAUTION

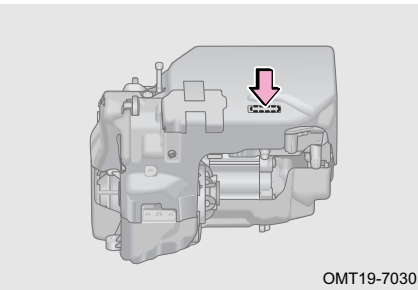
It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and areas around it.

### Vehicle Product Label



Vehicle product label is located on the driver side (as shown in the illustration).

### Front Drive Motor Number

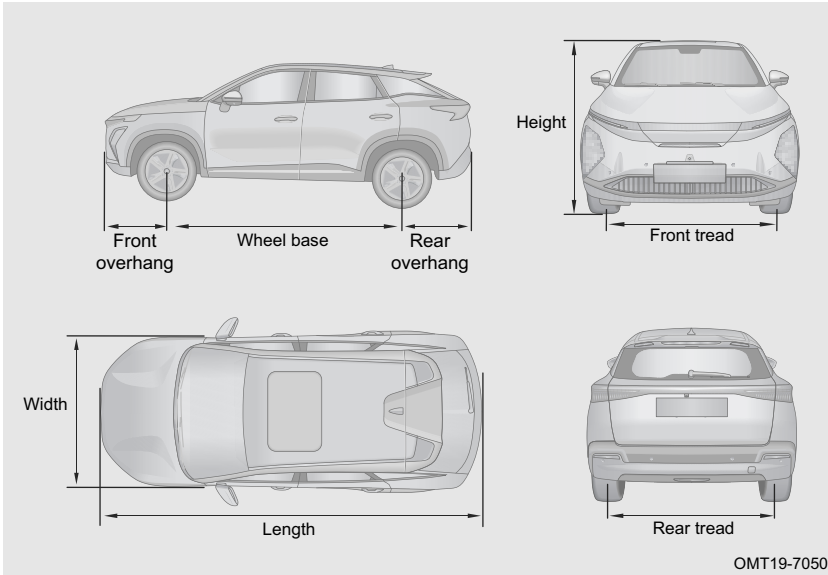


The front drive motor model and serial number are printed on the drive motor housing and drive motor label.

## 9. SPECIFICATION

### 9-2. Vehicle Specifications

#### Vehicle Dimensions



|                 |             |       |
|-----------------|-------------|-------|
| Overall Size    | Length (mm) | 4,424 |
|                 | Width (mm)  | 1,830 |
|                 | Height (mm) | 1,588 |
| Wheel Base (mm) |             | 2,630 |
| Tread           | Front (mm)  | 1,550 |
|                 | Rear (mm)   | 1,550 |
| Overhang        | Front (mm)  | 912   |
|                 | Rear (mm)   | 882   |

### Vehicle Type

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Vehicle Type             | 4 × 2 front-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, 3-compartment 4-door 5-seat integral body, right-hand drive |
| Drive Motor Model        | TZ210XS129   |
| Driving Motor Type       | Permanent magnet synchronous motor   |
| Power Battery Model      | 113ACT   |
| Power Battery Type       | LiFePO4  |
| External Charging or not | Yes  |
| External Charging Method | AC slow charging/DC fast charging  |

### Vehicle Weight

|  |                 |       |
|--|-----------------|-------|
| Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)                       |                 | 1,710 |
| Vehicle Curb Axle Weight                       | Front Axle (kg) | 913   |
|  | Rear Axle (kg)  | 797   |
| Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)         |                 | 2,246 |
| Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight         | Front Axle (kg) | 1,055 |
|  | Rear Axle (kg)  | 1,191 |
| Seating Capacity (- Including Driver) (Person) |                 | 5     |

#### WARNING

Please follow the vehicle load specified in the instruction manual and do not exceed the allowable total weight. Otherwise, the brake and handling performance of the vehicle may change and could cause a personal injury and accident.

## 9. SPECIFICATION

### Vehicle Performance

|                      |  |                |               |
|----------------------|--|----------------|---------------|
| Passing Performance  | Minimum Ground Clearance (mm)                |                | CVW165/GVW145 |
|                      | Minimum Turning Diameter (m)                 | Left Turn (m)  | 10.9          |
|                      |  | Right Turn (m) | 10.9          |
|                      | Approach Angle (°)                           |                | 19.7          |
|                      | Departure Angle (°)                          |                | 24.9          |
| Power Performance    | Maximum Vehicle Speed (mph) (km/h)           |                | 106 (172)     |
|                      | Maximum Gradeability (%)                     |                | > 40          |
| Economic performance | Driving Mileage (-mile) (km)                 |                | 267 (430)     |
|                      | Power Efficiency (kWh/100 mile) (kWh/100 km) |                | 96 (155)      |

### Drive Motor

|                     |                                    |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| Motor type          | Permanent magnet synchronous motor |
| Nominal Voltage (V) | 350                                |
| Rated Power (kW)    | 66                                 |
| Peek Power (kW)     | 150                                |
| Peak Torque (N·m)   | 340                                |
| Peak Speed (rpm)    | 16,000                             |

## Power Battery

|  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| Monomer Capacity (ah)  | 165                           |
| System Capacity (ah)   | 165                           |
| Total Energy (kWh)   | 61.0566                       |
| Monomer Voltage (V)  | 3.19                          |
| Rated Voltage (V)  | 370.04                        |
| Supported Drive Method   | 2WD                           |
| Cooling Method   | Liquid cooling                |
| Maximum Allowable Continuous Charging                          | 200                           |
| Peek Discharging Power (kW)                                    | 241                           |
| Size (mm)  | 1904.6 (L)*1372 (W)*284.4 (H) |
| Weight (kg)  | 428                           |
| Power Battery Energy Density (wh/kg)                           | 143                           |
| Charging Operating Temperature Range of Battery System (°C)    | -20~55                        |
| Discharging Operating Temperature Range of Battery System (°C) | -30~60                        |

## Power Battery Cells

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Product Model           | 0KICBA5C                                |
| Product Material System | Lithium iron phosphate                  |
| Rated Voltage (V)       | 3.19                                    |
| Rated Capacity (Ah)     | 165                                     |
| Cells Shape             | Square                                  |
| Size (mm)               | 580.0 ± 1.0)*(120.0 ± 0.5)*(17.9 ± 0.5) |
| Weight (kg)             | 2.6 ± 0.1                               |

## 9. SPECIFICATION

### On-board Charger Performance Parameters

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| Type                       | VAIMD62599                                    |
| Output Rated Power (kW)    | Single-phase MAX 6.6kW; Three-phase MAX 9.9kW |
| Input Voltage (V)          | Single-phase 220VAC; Three-phase 380VAC       |
| Output Voltage (V)         | 200VDC ~ 485VDC                               |
| Charging Efficiency (%)    | 94  |
| Rated Power (KVA)          | 3.3   |
| Rated Output Voltage (V)   | 220   |
| Inverter Input Voltage (V) | 200VDC ~ 485VDC                               |
| Cooling Method             | Water-cooled                                  |

### Suspension System

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Front Suspension | Macpherson type independent suspension, unadjustable height, anti-roll stabilizer bar is equipped, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber   |
| Rear Suspension  | Multi-link type independent suspension or twist beam type semi-independent suspension, unadjustable height, equipped with anti-roll stabilizer bar(if equipped), cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber |

### Wheel Alignment

|             |                           |                    |
|-------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| Front Wheel | Front Wheel Camber        | -25' ± 45'         |
|             | Kingpin Caster Angle      | 4°14' ± 59'        |
|             | Kingpin Inclination Angle | 11°30' ± 60'       |
|             | Front Wheel Toe-in        | 5' ± 3' (one side) |
| Rear Wheel  | Rear Wheel Camber         | -42' ± 30'         |



|  |                   |                    |
|--|-------------------|--------------------|
|  | Rear Wheel Toe-in | 5' ± 5' (one side) |
|--|-------------------|--------------------|

## Tyres

### Wheels and Tyres

|   |             |  |
|---|-------------|--|
| Tyre Model  |             | 215/55 R18   |
| Rim Model   |             | 18X7J  |
| Cold Tyre Inflation Pressure (kPa) (Unladen)  | Front Wheel | 260  |
|   | Rear Wheel  | 260  |
|   | Spare Tyre  | 300  |
| Tightening Torque of Tyre Bolts (N·m)   |             | 150 ± 10   |
| Wheel dynamic balance requirements for vehicle with a maximum design speed of more than 62 mph (100 km/h) |             | Allowable residual dynamic balance mass: Clamp balance block side ≤ 8 g, paste balance block side ≤ 10 g |

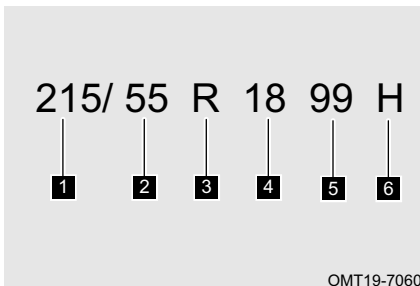
### READ

The tyre inflation pressures listed in the table above apply only to cold tyres. The pressure increases slightly when the tyre is heated, but it is unnecessary to lower the pressure.

### CAUTION

- Tyre pressure should be checked at least once a month and is particularly important if driving at high speeds.
- Cold tyre inflation pressure values are listed on a label of the driver's doorsill.

### Sample tyre mark and its meaning



- 1 Nominal section width
- 2 Nominal aspect ratio in %
- 3 Construction code
- 4 Nominal rim diameter in inches
- 5 Load index (not on ZR tyres)
- 6 Speed symbol

### Tyre mark information

Choose the proper tyres for your vehicle using the following tyre mark information.

## 9. SPECIFICATION

| Speed symbol | Maximum permissible speed |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| Q            | Up to 160 km/h (99 mph)   |
| R            | Up to 170 km/h (105 mph)  |
| S            | Up to 180 km/h (111 mph)  |
| T            | Up to 190 km/h (118 mph)  |
| U            | Up to 200 km/h (124 mph)  |
| H            | Up to 210 km/h (130 mph)  |
| V            | Up to 240 km/h (149 mph)  |
| W            | Up to 270 km/h (167 mph)  |
| Y            | Up to 300 km/h (186 mph)  |
| ZR           | Over 240 km/h (149 mph)   |

■ Tyre load index parameter comparison table

| Load index | Load capacity (kg) | Load index | Load capacity (kg) | Load index | Load capacity (kg) | Load index | Load capacity (kg) |
|------------|--------------------|------------|--------------------|------------|--------------------|------------|--------------------|
| 65         | 290                | 87         | 545                | 109        | 1030               | 131        | 1950               |
| 66         | 300                | 88         | 560                | 110        | 1060               | 132        | 2000               |
| 67         | 307                | 89         | 580                | 111        | 1090               | 133        | 2060               |
| 68         | 315                | 90         | 600                | 112        | 1120               | 134        | 2120               |
| 69         | 325                | 91         | 615                | 113        | 1150               | 135        | 2180               |
| 70         | 335                | 92         | 630                | 114        | 1180               | 136        | 2240               |
| 71         | 345                | 93         | 650                | 115        | 1215               | 137        | 2300               |
| 72         | 355                | 94         | 670                | 116        | 1250               | 138        | 2360               |
| 73         | 365                | 95         | 690                | 117        | 1285               | 139        | 2430               |
| 74         | 375                | 96         | 710                | 118        | 1320               | 140        | 2500               |
| 75         | 387                | 97         | 730                | 119        | 1360               | 141        | 2575               |
| 76         | 400                | 98         | 750                | 120        | 1400               | 142        | 2650               |
| 77         | 412                | 99         | 775                | 121        | 1450               | 143        | 2725               |
| 78         | 425                | 100        | 800                | 122        | 1500               | 144        | 2800               |
| 79         | 437                | 101        | 825                | 123        | 1550               | 145        | 2900               |
| 80         | 450                | 102        | 850                | 124        | 1600               | 146        | 3000               |
| 81         | 462                | 103        | 875                | 125        | 1650               | 147        | 3075               |
| 82         | 475                | 104        | 900                | 126        | 1700               | 148        | 3150               |
| 83         | 487                | 105        | 925                | 127        | 1750               | 149        | 3250               |

|    |     |     |      |     |      |     |      |
|----|-----|-----|------|-----|------|-----|------|
| 84 | 500 | 106 | 950  | 128 | 1800 | 150 | 3350 |
| 85 | 515 | 107 | 975  | 129 | 1850 |     |      |
| 86 | 530 | 108 | 1000 | 130 | 1900 |     |      |

### Battery

|               |          |
|---------------|----------|
| Battery Model | 12V 60Ah |
|---------------|----------|

### Light Bulb Specification

| Light Bulb Name                 | Nominal Light Source (Type/Model) | Replacement Advice                    |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Headlight (High Beam/ Low Beam) | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| Front Fog Light                 | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| Rear Fog Light                  | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| Front Position Light            | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| Rear Position Light             | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| Brake Light                     | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| High Mounted Brake Light        | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| Reverse Light                   | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| Front Indicator Signal Light    | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| Side Indicator Signal Light     | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| Rear Indicator Signal Light     | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| Daytime Running Light           | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |
| License Plate Light             | LED                               | Replaced by authorized service centre |

## 9. SPECIFICATION

### Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size Excluding Following Components

---

Components not included in vehicle length measurement range

The following devices do not have laden function and do not exceed the front or rear end of the vehicle by more than 50 mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5mm:

- Wiper and washer
- Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, emission, transmission type, drive mode and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle
- Lights and light signal device
- Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent
- External sunshade device
- Customs sealing device and its protective device
- Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device
- Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch
- Step plate (or ladder), vehicle climbing step plate and handle on top of bumper used for cleaning windows.
- Rear emblem plate with LOGO
- Removable trailer or towing device
- Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in vehicle width size:

- Indirect view device
- School bus stop plate in inoperative state

The following devices do not have laden function and their one side size exceeds the side of vehicle for no more than 50mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5mm:

- Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, emission, transmission type, drive mode and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle
- Lights and light signal device
- Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent
- Customs sealing device and its protective device
- Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device
- Local water drain slot: Refers to the water drain slot used to guide rain flow above driver door (or window) and passenger door, both sides of front windshield
- Flexible protruding part of splash proof system

- Retractable step plate, entering/exiting slope of bus, lifting platform and equivalent that is in the retract state
- Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch
- Tyre failure signal device
- Tyre pressure indicator
- Deformed part of tyre wall directly above contact point between tyre and ground
- Reversing assistance device
- Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in vehicle height measurement range:

Soft part of antenna

Device without laden function:

- Intake duct
- Indirect view device
- Current collecting device of electric vehicle (including its fixing device)
- Vehicle rear removable or foldable air deflector, with the deployed length no more than 2000 mm and folded length no more than 200 mm
- Tailboard, entering/exiting slope and equivalent with a horizontal length no more than 300 mm in retract state
- Tail ladder

## Your Rights

---

Depending on local law, you may have the following rights regarding your personal data: the right to object or withdraw consent, the right to access, update, and correct inaccuracies of your personal data, the right to have your personal data restricted or deleted, the right to receive your personal data and request its transfer to another organization where technically feasible, and the right to be informed of and lodge a complaint with your local data protection authority.

## Contact Us

---

To make a query, raise a concern, or exercise your data subject rights, please feel free to contact us at [privacy@mychery.com](mailto:privacy@mychery.com). This applies if you are based within the European Economic Area and the UK.

We take your privacy seriously and aim to respond to you within one month or within the timeline specified by the relevant local privacy protection law, after confirming your identity.

If you believe that we have not adequately addressed your complaints or concerns, you have the right to lodge a complaint with a competent data protection authority.



**A**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| A/C Setting .....   | 119 |
| AC Charging (Slow Charging).....  | 35  |
| Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)<br>System .....   | 161 |
| Adjusting Instrument Cluster.....   | 45  |
| Adjusting Steering Wheel.....   | 52  |
| Advanced Driver Assistance<br>System (ADAS) .....   | 200 |
| Air Conditioning Cooling<br>Operation.....  | 119 |
| Air Conditioning Heating<br>Operation.....  | 119 |
| Air Conditioning System.....  | 114 |
| Air Outlets Airflow Control .....   | 121 |
| Airbag .....  | 148 |
| Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ...  | 196 |
| Audio Button .....  | 110 |
| Audio System.....   | 106 |
| Audio View .....  | 106 |
| authorized service centre is at<br>Your Service.....                                      | 224 |
| Auto Hold System (AUTO<br>HOLD).....  | 146 |
| Automatic Emergency Braking<br>(AEB) System/Front Collision<br>Warning (FCW) System ..... | 177 |

**B**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Basic Knowledge of Vehicle<br>Emergency..... | 202 |
| Battery Electric System.....                 | 22  |
| Battery .....                                | 247 |
| Before Starting Engine .....                 | 13  |
| Before Starting Vehicle .....                | 139 |
| Blind Spot Detection (BSD)<br>System .....   | 171 |
| Blind Spot Detection Assist<br>System .....  | 171 |
| Boot door Emergency Opening ..               | 136 |
| Boot door.....                               | 130 |
| Brake System.....                            | 144 |
| Braking Force Control System ...             | 193 |

**C**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Charging Device.....                     | 32  |
| Charging Instructions .....              | 29  |
| Charging Port Cap .....                  | 31  |
| Charging Precautions.....                | 29  |
| Checking Air Conditioning Filter .       | 232 |
| Checking Brake Fluid Level.....          | 229 |
| Checking Coolant Level.....              | 229 |
| Checking Fuse .....                      | 221 |
| Checking reducer oil .....               | 229 |
| Checking Tyres .....                     | 230 |
| Checking Windshield Washer<br>Fluid..... | 233 |
| Checking Wiper Blades .....              | 233 |
| Child Lock .....                         | 100 |
| Child Restraint System .....             | 76  |
| Child Restraint System .....             | 76  |
| Column Shift Switch .....                | 140 |
| Contact Us.....                          | 249 |
| Correct Sitting Posture .....            | 65  |

**D**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Data Privacy .....                                      | 199 |
| DC Charging (Fast Charging) .....                       | 37  |
| Door Mechanical Switch .....                            | 98  |
| Door Opening Warning (DOW)<br>System .....              | 172 |
| Door Unlocking/Locking.....                             | 97  |
| Doors.....  | 97  |
| Drive Motor.....  | 242 |
| Driver Drowsiness and<br>Attention Warning (DDAW) ..... | 199 |
| Driver Monitoring System<br>(DMS) .....                 | 191 |
| Driver Monitoring System.....                           | 191 |
| Driving Mode.....                                       | 141 |
| Driving on Road Covered with<br>Ice and Snow.....       | 19  |
| Driving Operation.....                                  | 139 |
| Driving Recorder (If Equipped)...                       | 121 |
| Driving Recorder .....                                  | 121 |
| Driving Safety Assist System .....                      | 174 |

**E**

|                       |    |
|-----------------------|----|
| Effective Range ..... | 92 |
|-----------------------|----|

## ALPHABETICAL INDEX

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) .....           | 144 |
| Electric Power Steering System (EPS) .....          | 143 |
| Electronic Stability Control System .....           | 193 |
| Emergency Call Function .....                       | 202 |
| Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) .....                  | 169 |
| Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag ..... | 84  |
| Extended Function .....                             | 198 |
| Exterior Lighting .....                             | 59  |

### F

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| "Face to face" Consultative Service Card (Dealer) ..... | 7   |
| Fogging Instructions for Light .....                    | 64  |
| Follow Me Home Function .....                           | 62  |
| Foot Brake .....  | 147 |
| Front Compartment Cover .....                           | 129 |
| Front Drive Motor Number .....                          | 239 |
| Front Power Outlet .....                                | 128 |
| Front Seat .....  | 67  |
| Front USB Port .....                                    | 128 |
| Fuse Box .....  | 220 |
| Fuse .....  | 220 |

### G

|                     |     |
|---------------------|-----|
| Gear Position ..... | 139 |
| Gear Shifting ..... | 139 |

### H

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Hazard Light .....                      | 203 |
| Head Restraint .....                    | 66  |
| Headlight Leveling Adjusting .....      | 62  |
| Hill Descent Control (HDC) System ..... | 195 |
| Horn .....                              | 51  |
| How to Read This Manual .....           | 2   |

### I

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| If Battery is Depleted ..... | 209 |
|------------------------------|-----|

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Immobilizer System .....                        | 96  |
| Index .....                                     | 2   |
| Inside Rear View Mirror .....                   | 52  |
| Installing Towing Eyelet .....                  | 219 |
| Instrument Cluster Overview .....               | 44  |
| Instrument Cluster .....                        | 44  |
| Integrated Braking Force Control System .....   | 193 |
| Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) .....        | 183 |
| Intelligent Cruise Control System .....         | 181 |
| Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) .....        | 64  |
| Intelligent High Beam Assist System (HMA) ..... | 180 |
| Intelligent Recharge .....                      | 40  |
| Interior Lighting .....                         | 61  |

### K

|                       |    |
|-----------------------|----|
| Key Information ..... | 89 |
| Keyless Entry .....   | 93 |

### L

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Label Location .....                     | 238 |
| Lane Assist System .....                 | 167 |
| Lane Assist System .....                 | 167 |
| Lane Departure Warning (LDW) .....       | 168 |
| Leaving Reminder System (DAI) .....      | 174 |
| Light Bulb Specification .....           | 247 |
| Lighting System .....                    | 59  |
| Local Setting .....                      | 107 |
| Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound ..... | 143 |

### M

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Manual Boot door .....   | 130 |
| Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size Excluding Following Components ..... | 248 |
| Moon Roof Jam Protection Function .....  | 105 |



|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Moon Roof Remote Control<br>Function ..... | 105 |
|--|-----|

**N**

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| Never Drive Through Flooded<br>Water ..... | 17       |
| New Energy Vehicle Delivery<br>Card .....  | 5        |
| New Energy .....                           | 38       |
| New Vehicle Break-in .....                 | 11       |
| New Vehicle Inspection .....               | 4        |
| Normal Maintenance .....                   | 226, 228 |
| Notes to User .....                        | 11       |

**O**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| On-board Charger<br>Performance Parameters ..... | 244 |
| Opening/Closing Front<br>Compartment Cover ..... | 129 |
| Operation/Malfunction Indicator ...              | 46  |
| Outside Rear View Mirror .....                   | 53  |
| Owner Service .....                              | 4   |
| Owner's Manual Introduction .....                | 11  |

**P**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Panoramic View Monitor<br>System (AVM) (If Equipped) .....                | 187 |
| Parking Assist System .....   | 184 |
| Parking on Slope .....  | 14  |
| Parking Operations .....  | 14  |
| Parking Radar Assist System ...   | 184 |
| Parking View Monitor System<br>(RVC) (If Equipped) .....                  | 186 |
| Phone-link .....  | 111 |
| Pictorial Index .....   | 2   |
| Power Battery Cells .....   | 243 |
| Power Battery Recovery<br>Requirements and Procedure<br>Information ..... | 29  |
| Power battery .....   | 202 |
| Power Battery .....   | 243 |
| Power Boot Door .....   | 131 |
| Power Moon Roof .....   | 104 |
| Power Outlet .....  | 128 |
| Power Windows .....   | 100 |

**R**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Reading Vehicle Identification<br>Code Information ..... | 225 |
| Rear Collision Warning (RCW)<br>System .....             | 173 |
| Rear Cross Traffic Alert (-<br>RCTA) System .....        | 173 |
| Rear Cross Traffic Brake (-<br>RCTB) System .....        | 173 |
| Rear USB Port .....                                      | 129 |
| Rear View Mirror .....                                   | 52  |
| Recommended Child Restraint<br>Systems .....             | 78  |
| Reflective Vest .....                                    | 203 |
| Refrigeration/Warming<br>Function of Armrest Box .....   | 121 |
| Regular Maintenance .....                                | 234 |
| Remote Starting for Smart Key ...                        | 97  |
| Repair and Maintenance .....                             | 224 |
| Replacing Fuse .....                                     | 221 |
| Replacing Wiper Blade .....                              | 58  |
| Rescue Information Card .....                            | 40  |

**S**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Safety Check .....                                   | 13  |
| Safety Check .....                                   | 225 |
| Seat Belt Pretensioner .....                         | 75  |
| Seat Belt .....                                      | 70  |
| Seat Heating Function (If<br>equipped) .....         | 68  |
| Seat Ventilation Function .....                      | 69  |
| Seat .....   | 65  |
| Second Row Seat .....                                | 68  |
| Secondary Collision Mitigation<br>System (MCB) ..... | 195 |
| Service and Maintenance of<br>Battery .....          | 228 |
| Service and Maintenance of<br>Power Battery .....    | 227 |
| Setting .....  | 124 |
| Shortcut Menu .....                                  | 107 |
| Smart Key Vehicle Locating .....                     | 97  |
| Smart Key .....                                      | 89  |
| Smart Vehicle Locating Function ..                   | 63  |
| Spare Tools .....                                    | 204 |
| Special Statement .....                              | 4   |
| Speed Control Function (SCF) ...                     | 166 |

## ALPHABETICAL INDEX

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) .....      | 159 |
| Speed Limit System .....                   | 161 |
| Steering System .....                      | 143 |
| Steering Wheel Heating (If equipped) ..... | 51  |
| Steering Wheel .....                       | 51  |
| Storage Space .....                        | 126 |
| Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors ....         | 129 |
| Suspension System .....                    | 244 |
| Symbols in the Manual .....                | 3   |

### T

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Table of Contents .....  | 2   |
| Towing Vehicle .....   | 218 |
| Towing .....   | 211 |
| Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System ..... | 181 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System .....                                  | 159 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition System .....  | 159 |
| Tyre Chains .....  | 19  |
| Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) .....                                 | 175 |
| Tyre Rotation .....  | 232 |
| Tyres .....  | 245 |

### U

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Usage Precautions for Electric Vehicle ..... | 23  |
| Usage Precautions for Power Battery .....    | 22  |
| USB Port .....                               | 128 |

### V

|                      |    |
|----------------------|----|
| Vehicle Arming ..... | 95 |
|----------------------|----|

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Vehicle Dimensions .....                  | 240 |
| Vehicle Emergency Handling .....          | 205 |
| Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) ..... | 238 |
| Vehicle Performance .....                 | 242 |
| Vehicle Power-off .....                   | 138 |
| Vehicle Power-on and Power-off .....      | 138 |
| Vehicle Power-on .....                    | 138 |
| Vehicle Product Label .....               | 239 |
| Vehicle Setting .....                     | 107 |
| Vehicle Specifications .....              | 240 |
| Vehicle Storage .....                     | 227 |
| Vehicle Type .....                        | 241 |
| Vehicle Weight .....                      | 241 |
| Voice Recognition Function .....          | 111 |

### W

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Warning Triangle .....                             | 204 |
| Wheel Alignment .....                              | 244 |
| When Driving .....                                 | 14  |
| When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces .....       | 17  |
| Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped) ..... | 102 |
| Window Remote Control Function .....               | 102 |
| Windows .....                                      | 100 |
| Winter Driving Tips .....                          | 18  |
| Wiper System Operation .....                       | 56  |
| Wiper System .....                                 | 56  |
| Wireless Charging .....                            | 125 |

### Y

|                   |     |
|-------------------|-----|
| Your Rights ..... | 249 |
|-------------------|-----|

# **Emergency Response Guide**



1-1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Plug-in Electric Vehicle  
System Information .....2  
Disconnecting 12 V Battery....6  
High Voltage Power  
Release Method.....6  
Unlocking/Releasing  
Charging Cable.....7

1-2. Rescue Program Information

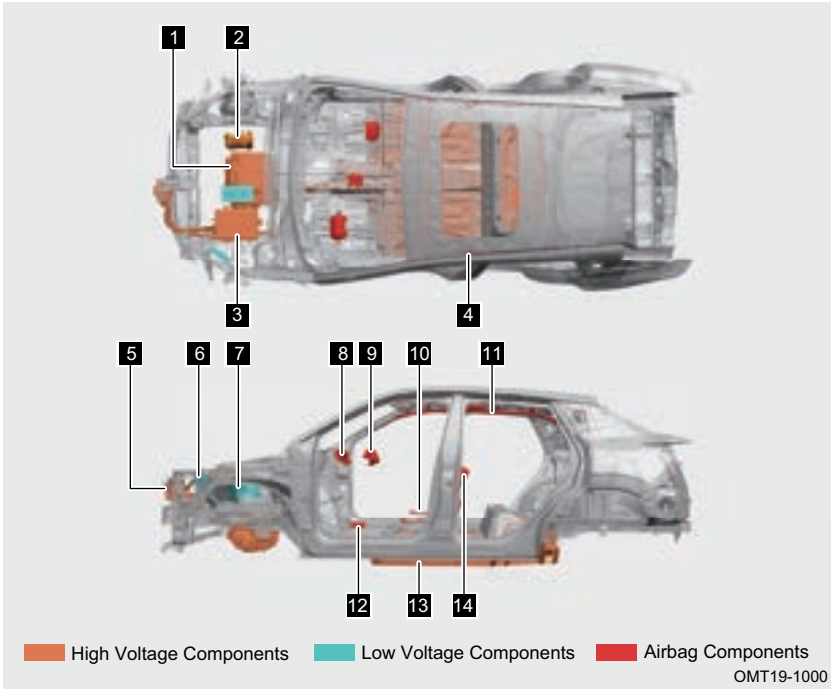
Protection Device  
Required for Rescuer.....8  
Parking Operations.....9  
Lifting Vehicle ..... 10  
Boot Door Emergency  
Opening..... 10  
Emergency Rescue ..... 10  
Towing Vehicle..... 12

# 1. RESCUE INFORMATION

## 1-1. RESCUE INFORMATION

### Plug-in Electric Vehicle System Information

#### Components of EV Key System



- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <b>1</b> Motor Assembly                | <b>2</b> Electric Compressor Assembly                 | <b>3</b> On-board Charging CDU Assembly |
| <b>4</b> Left Curtain                  | <b>5</b> Internal Wire Harness Charging Port Assembly | <b>6</b> Vehicle Controller Assembly    |
| <b>7</b> Battery                       | <b>8</b> Front Passenger Airbag Assembly              | <b>9</b> Driver Airbag Assembly         |
| <b>10</b> Front Right Seat Side Airbag | <b>11</b> Right Curtain                               | <b>12</b> Airbag Module                 |
| <b>13</b> Power Battery Pack           | <b>14</b> Front Left Seat Side Airbag                 |   |

 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

All parts of high voltage components in the illustration should be disposed or recycled according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

 CAUTION

- Never tow the vehicle at high speed when drive wheels are on the ground.
- It is forbidden to manipulate motor controller on high-speed bench without power and water. Never drag the motor to reverse at high speed with highspeed dynamometer bench or carry out similar experiment such as towing at high speed.
- High-voltage system components in power system mainly include high-voltage wire harness, power battery, on-board charger assembly, high-voltage heater, charging port, electric compressor, front motor controller, and rear motor controller assembly (if equipped); High-voltage system components are very dangerous. Do not touch the high-voltage system components, cables or connectors.

 WARNING

- Personnel without high-voltage technical qualification are not allowed to touch, repair or replace high voltage components or high voltage wire harness in the illustration.
- In case of traffic accident, do not touch any component and high voltage wire harness in the illustration to avoid the second personal injury.
- For towing of plug-in electric vehicle, We strongly recommends that you seek help from professional rescuer or authorized service centre.
- When cutting the vehicle for rescue, avoid the components in the illustration and the rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

## 1. RESCUE INFORMATION

### Basic vehicle information



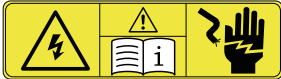


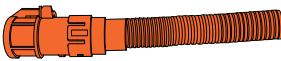
|  |             |       |
|--|-------------|-------|
| Overall Size                                 | Length (mm) | 4,424 |
|  | Width (mm)  | 1,830 |
|  | Height (mm) | 1,588 |
| Wheel Base (mm)                              |             | 2,630 |
| Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)       |             | 2,246 |
| Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person) |             | 5     |

### Plug-in electric vehicle system basic information

|                        |                                  |                     |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| Battery cells          | Type                             | Lithium ion battery |
|                        | Monomer nominal capacity (Ah)    | 165                 |
|                        | Monomer nominal voltage (V)      | 3.19                |
| Power battery assembly | Battery pack rated capacity (Ah) | 165                 |
|                        | Battery pack nominal voltage (V) | 3.19                |
|                        | Battery pack weight (kg)         | 428                 |
|                        | Number of battery pack (pieces)  | 1                   |



Plug-in electric vehicle system warning signs

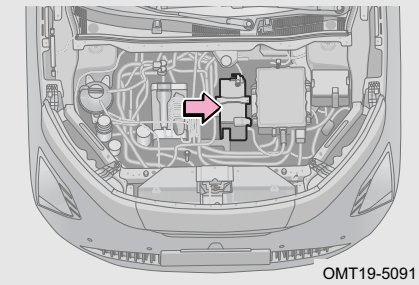
|                                       |   |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| <p>High voltage warning sign 1</p>    |    | <p>Danger! Never touch high voltage system components.</p>  |
| <p>High voltage warning sign 2</p>    |    | <p>High voltage. Danger! Never depress!</p>   |
| <p>High voltage warning sign 3</p>    |    | <p>High voltage system components. Danger! Never touch high voltage components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock!</p>   |
| <p>High voltage warning sign 4</p>    |    | <p>High voltage system components. Danger! Never touch high voltage components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!</p>  |
| <p>High voltage warning sign 5</p>    |   | <p>Danger! Inflammable and explosive article. Do not open or repair the battery pack without authorization. Do not short-circuit the positive and negative terminals of the battery with wires or other metallic objects. Keep it far away from fire source and do not use it in high temperature. Never immerse it in water or other liquids. Optimal storage temperature: -10°C - 35°C!</p> |
| <p>High voltage wire harness sign</p> |  | <p>Vehicle high voltage system components are connected by orange high voltage wire harness. Never touch high voltage components without wearing protection device!</p>   |

# 1. RESCUE INFORMATION

## WARNING

- After vehicle is started, power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning signs.
- Never touch, remove or replace components, orange cable and connectors with power system warning signs to prevent high voltage electric shock.

### Disconnecting 12 V Battery

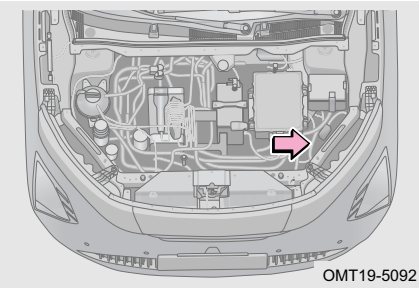


Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode;

Step 2: Open the front compartment cover;

Step 3: Disconnect the negative (-) battery terminal cable.

### High Voltage Power Release Method

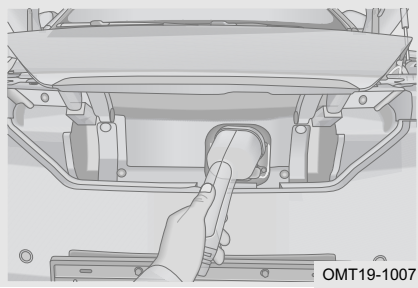


Power off and wait until the display is turned off, disconnect the battery, and turn off the service switch.

## Unlocking/Releasing Charging Cable

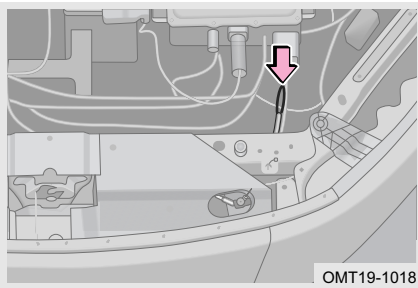
1

RESCUE INFORMATION

**Method 1**

Charging cable has anti-theft function. After inserting charging cable and entering full power charging or when doors are locked, charging cable will be locked automatically.

When doors are unlocked, charging cable will be unlocked automatically. If the charging cable is not unplugged within 2 minutes after doors are unlocked, charging cable will be locked again. At this time, charging cable can be unlocked again until doors are locked and then unlocked.

**Method 2**

Use the cable to release the charging cable if the charging cable cannot be pulled out from the charging port.

Step 1: Make sure that the vehicle is not charged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;

Step 2: Pull bonnet release lever twice, bonnet will spring up slightly;

Step 3: Lift the bonnet upward, lift and support the bonnet under action of air spring;

Step 4: Pull charging cable release cable to release charging cable manually.

# 1. RESCUE INFORMATION

## 1-2. Rescue Program Information

### Protection Device Required for Rescuer



#### Basic Rescue Protection Device:

- 1** High Resistance Safety Work Shoes
- 2** Cotton Gloves
- 3** Protective Gloves

#### High Voltage Rescue Protection Device:

- 4** High Voltage Power Specialist Protective Clothing
- 5** Rubber Sheet
- 6** Safety Helmet with Goggles

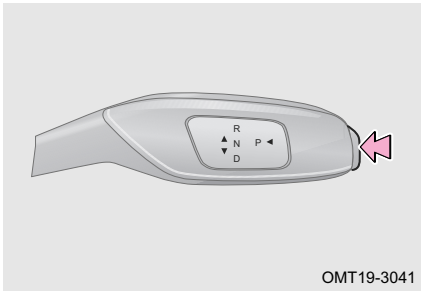
#### Fire Rescue Protection Device:

- 7** Compressed Air Breathing Mask
- 8** Thermal Imaging Camera

**⚠ WARNING**

Rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

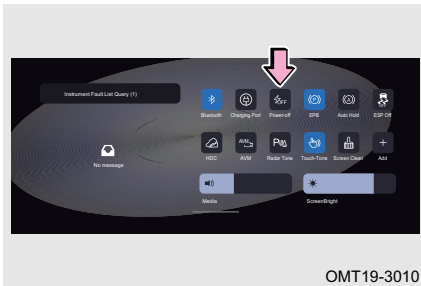
## Parking Operations



Step 1: Depress brake pedal, and park the vehicle smoothly. When the vehicle is stationary, press P button to switch the gear position to P to activate the parking brake function;

Step 2: The following operations will power off the vehicle:operation:

- After the vehicle is unlocked, the vehicle is parked and all doors, front compartment cover, and luggage compartment are closed, the vehicle is actively powered off after 30 minutes without any
- If the driver seat is not occupied and all doors (including front compartment cover and luggage compartment) are in closed condition, lock the vehicle with smart key.



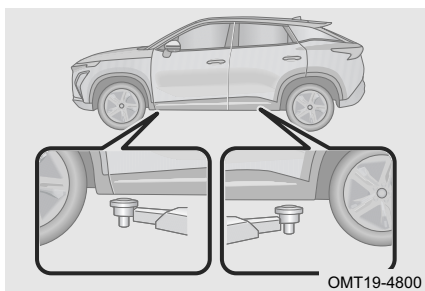
- When the driver seat occupied or with the doors open, long press the power switch for 5s to power off directly.

### Electric parking emergency releasing (during vehicle stopping)

When EPB operates, press electric parking brake button and depress the brake pedal, as well as the vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, electric parking is released in emergency. It is recommended to use it only in rescue trailers or rare situations.

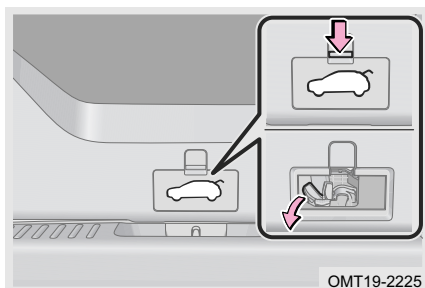
## 1. RESCUE INFORMATION

### Lifting Vehicle



Make sure that the vehicle is on the correct jacking point to avoid damage to high/low voltage cables or power battery when the vehicle is lifted.

### Boot Door Emergency Opening



Boot door cannot be opened when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, open the boot door with boot door emergency device switch (stop the vehicle steadily as much as possible if condition permits).

Step 1: Fold the rear seat back;

Step 2: Get in the rear of vehicle and open emergency device cover;

Step 3: Move the emergency device switch to right with hand and then release it, then push the Boot door to open it.

### Emergency Rescue

#### Vehicle wading rescue

##### ■ Hints for wading:

When the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road surface, pay attention to:

- Found out depth of water before entering the waterlogged road, and the height of water must not exceed the lower edge of the body;
- If you need to wade in the water, turn off A/C before the vehicle starts, slow down, and then gently depress the accelerator pedal and do not loose the foot, pass the waterlogged section at a slow speed.

Note: Under strong convection weather, pay attention to choose a place with shelter conditions as far as possible to charge; If the vehicle is in water or wading position is higher than the doorsill position, which may lead to water enter high-voltage component, it must contact the authorized service centre in

time for proper detection and treatment; It is forbidden to drive on the road where water exceeds half of the tyre.

■ Hints for soaking:

If the vehicle is soaked in water due to weather or special reasons, which may cause safety risks or cause secondary damage to the vehicle, pay attention to:

- Turn the vehicle to "OFF".
- Contact the brand dealer of the vehicle to obtain further vehicle handling advice.

### Vehicle fire rescue

If fire occurs, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information card to the rescuers.

 WARNING

When fire occurs, never touch any part of vehicle directly. Keep away from the vehicle and wait for professional rescuers wearing appropriate protective device to operate it.

### Power battery leakage rescue

If power battery leaks, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information card to the rescuers.

 WARNING

High voltage battery liquid leakage caused by collision can only be operated by professional rescuers who wear protective mask and solvent-isolation gloves. Do not touch liquid directly.

### Vehicle cutting area

Vehicle pillar uses cast aluminum alloy to protect personal safety. If it is necessary to cut during rescue, proper tools should be used. It is forbidden to cut the high temperature and high voltage areas of the vehicle (such as airbag related parts, fuel related parts, high voltage components).

 WARNING

When cutting the vehicle, professional rescuers must use appropriate tools such as hydraulic cutter etc. and wear appropriate personal protective device to avoid serious personal injuries.

## 1. RESCUE INFORMATION

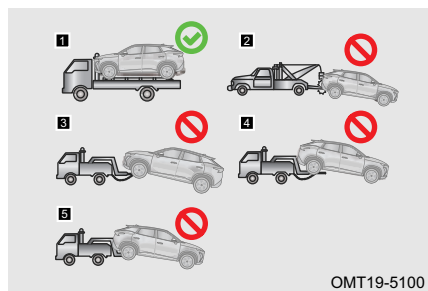
### Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact the authorized service centre or professional towing service department, or to seek help from the organization that provides roadside assistance services that you belong to.

#### WARNING

- Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty.
- To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly.
- Do not allow other vehicles to pull your vehicle with only rope or iron chain.

### Using flatbed trailer



Please use ① flatbed rescue vehicle to load the vehicle

Precautions for vehicle traction are as follows:

- Use the traction mode with four-wheel off-the-ground, do not use traction modes of ②, ③, ④ and ⑤ in the illustration.
- Turn the shift position to N, turn on the hazard warning light and close the door before towing.
- Never ride in the accident vehicle during towing.

#### CAUTION

Never transfer the vehicle with forklift after the vehicle breaks down.

#### WARNING

- No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the flatbed rescue vehicle, failure to do so may cause personal injury or even death.
- The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., first solve the safety risk.